



# **AWS Cloud**

## **NetApp Solutions**

NetApp  
May 03, 2024

# Table of Contents

- AWS Cloud ..... 1
  - TR-4986: Simplified, Automated Oracle Deployment on Amazon FSx ONTAP with iSCSI ..... 1
  - TR-4979: Simplified, Self-managed Oracle in VMware Cloud on AWS with guest-mounted FSx ONTAP .. 18
  - TR-4981: Oracle Active Data Guard Cost Reduction with Amazon FSx ONTAP ..... 86
  - TR-4973: Quick Recovery and Clone of Oracle VLDB with Incremental Merge on AWS FSx ONTAP .... 122
  - TR-4974: Oracle 19c in Standalone Restart on AWS FSx/EC2 with NFS/ASM ..... 203
  - TR-4965: Oracle Database Deployment and Protection in AWS FSx/EC2 with iSCSI/ASM ..... 229
  - Oracle Database Deployment on AWS EC2 and FSx Best Practices ..... 260

# AWS Cloud

## TR-4986: Simplified, Automated Oracle Deployment on Amazon FSx ONTAP with iSCSI

Allen Cao, Niyaz Mohamed, NetApp

### Purpose

Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP is a storage service that allows you to launch and run fully managed NetApp ONTAP file systems in the AWS Cloud. It provides the familiar features, performance, capabilities, and APIs of NetApp file systems with the agility, scalability, and simplicity of a fully managed AWS service. It empowers you to run the most demanding database workload, such as Oracle, in the AWS cloud with peace of mind.

This documentation demonstrates the simplified deployment of Oracle databases in an Amazon FSx ONTAP file system using Ansible automation. The Oracle database is deployed in a standalone ReStart configuration with iSCSI protocol for data access and Oracle ASM for database storage disks management. It also provides information on Oracle database backup, restore, and clone using the NetApp SnapCenter UI tool for storage-efficient database operation in AWS Cloud.

This solution addresses the following use cases:

- Automated Oracle database deployment on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system
- Oracle database backup and restore on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system using NetApp SnapCenter tool
- Oracle database clone for dev/test or other use cases on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system using NetApp SnapCenter tool

### Audience

This solution is intended for the following people:

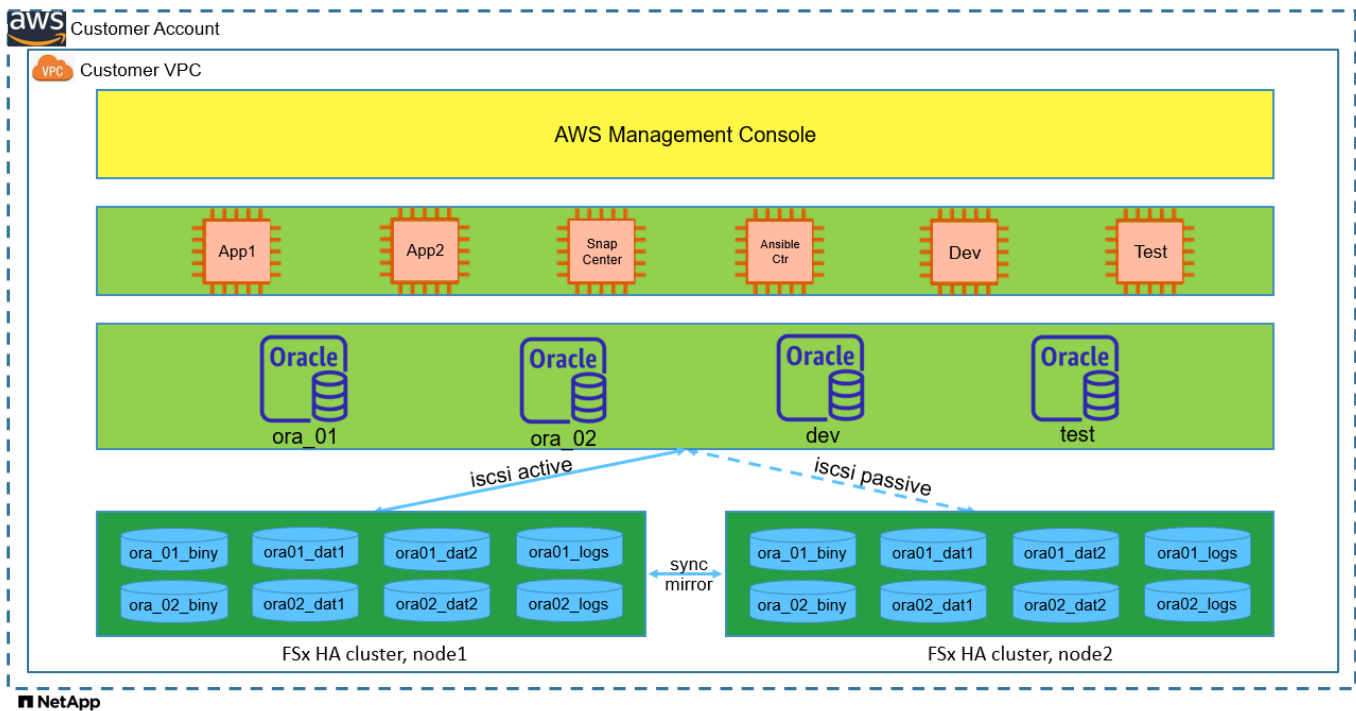
- A DBA who would like to deploy Oracle on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system.
- A database solution architect who would like to test Oracle workloads on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system.
- A storage administrator who would like to deploy and manage an Oracle database on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system.
- An application owner who would like to stand up an Oracle database on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system.

### Solution test and validation environment

The testing and validation of this solution were performed in a lab setting that might not match the final deployment environment. See the section [\[Key Factors for Deployment Consideration\]](#) for more information.

### Architecture

# Simplified, automated Oracle deployment on Amazon FSx ONTAP with iSCSI



## Hardware and software components

### Hardware

Amazon FSx ONTAP storage	Current version offered by AWS	One FSx HA cluster in the same VPC and availability zone
EC2 instance for compute	t2.xlarge/4vCPU/16G	Two EC2 T2 xlarge EC2 instances for concurrent deployment

### Software

RedHat Linux	RHEL-8.6, 4.18.0-372.9.1.el8.x86_64 kernel	Deployed RedHat subscription for testing
Windows Server	2022 Standard, 10.0.20348 Build 20348	Hosting SnapCenter server
Oracle Grid Infrastructure	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle Database	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle OPatch	Version 12.2.0.1.36	Latest patch p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
SnapCenter Server	Version 4.9P1	Workgroup deployment
Open JDK	Version java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64	SnapCenter plugin requirement on DB VMs

## Oracle database configuration in the lab environment

Server	Database	DB Storage
ora_01	NTAP1(NTAP1_PDB1,NTAP1_PDB2,NTAP1_PDB3)	iSCSI luns on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system
ora_02	NTAP2(NTAP2_PDB1,NTAP2_PDB2,NTAP2_PDB3)	iSCSI luns on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system

### Key factors for deployment consideration

- **Oracle database storage layout.** In this automated Oracle deployment, we provision four database volumes to host Oracle binary, data, and logs by default. A single lun in a volume allocates to Oracle binary. We then create two ASM disk groups from data and logs luns. Within the +DATA asm disk group, we provision two data volumes with two luns in a volume. Within the +LOGS asm disk group, we create two luns in a log volume. Multiple luns laid out within an ONTAP volume provides better performance in general.
- **Multiple DB servers deployment.** The automation solution can deploy an Oracle container database to multiple DB servers in a single Ansible playbook run. Regardless of the number of DB servers, the playbook execution remains the same. You can deploy multiple container databases to a single EC2 instance with different database instance IDs (Oracle SID). But ensure there is sufficient memory on the host to support deployed databases.
- **iSCSI configuration.** The EC2 instance database server connects to FSx storage with the iSCSI protocol. EC2 instances generally deploy with a single network interface or ENI. The single NIC interface carries both iSCSI and application traffic. It is important to gauge the Oracle database peak I/O throughput requirement by carefully analyzing the Oracle AWR report in order to choose the right EC2 compute instance that meets both application and iSCSI traffic-throughput requirements. Also, AWS EC2 generally limits each TCP flow to 5 Gbps. Each iSCSI path provides 5 Gbps (625 MBps) of bandwidth, and multiple iSCSI connections may be required to support higher throughput requirements.
- **Oracle ASM redundancy level to use for each Oracle ASM disk group that you create.** Because the Amazon FSx ONTAP is HA enabled for data protection at the cluster disk level, you should use `External Redundancy`, which means that the option does not allow Oracle ASM to mirror the contents of the disk group.
- **Database backup.** NetApp provides a SnapCenter software suite for database backup, restore, and cloning with a user-friendly UI interface. NetApp recommends implementing such a management tool to achieve fast (under a minute) SnapShot backup, quick (minutes) database restore, and database clone.

### Solution deployment

The following sections provide step-by-step procedures for automated Oracle 19c deployment and protection on Amazon FSx ONTAP file system with directly mounted database luns via iSCSI to EC2 instance VM in a single node Restart configuration with Oracle ASM as database volume manager.

### Prerequisites for deployment

Deployment requires the following prerequisites.

1. An AWS account has been set up, and the necessary VPC and network segments have been created within your AWS account.
2. From the AWS EC2 console, deploy EC2 Linux instances as Oracle DB servers. Enable SSH private/public key authentication for ec2-user. See the architecture diagram in the previous section for details about the environment setup. Also review the [User Guide for Linux instances](#) for more information.
3. From the AWS FSx console, provision an Amazon FSx ONTAP file system that meets the requirements. Review the documentation [Creating FSx for ONTAP file systems](#) for step-by-step instructions.
4. Steps 2 and 3 can be performed using the following Terraform automation toolkit, which creates an EC2 instance named `ora_01` and an FSx file system named `fsx_01`. Review the instruction carefully and change the variables to suit your environment before execution. The template can be easily revised for your own deployment requirements.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-
Automation/na_aws_fsx_ec2_deploy.git
```

5. Provision an EC2 Linux instance as the Ansible controller node with the latest version of Ansible and Git installed. Refer to the following link for details: [Getting Started with NetApp solution automation in section -](#)  
Setup the Ansible Control Node for CLI deployments on RHEL / CentOS or  
Setup the Ansible Control Node for CLI deployments on Ubuntu / Debian.
6. Provision a Windows server to run the NetApp SnapCenter UI tool with the latest version. Refer to the following link for details: [Install the SnapCenter Server](#)
7. Clone a copy of the NetApp Oracle deployment automation toolkit for iSCSI.

```
git clone https://bitbucket.ngage.netapp.com/scm/ns-
bb/na_oracle_deploy_iscsi.git
```

8. Stage following Oracle 19c installation files on EC2 instances `/tmp/archive` directory.

```
installer_archives:
- "LINUX.X64_193000_grid_home.zip"
- "p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip"
- "LINUX.X64_193000_db_home.zip"
- "p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip"
- "p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip"
```



Ensure that you have allocated at least 50G in Oracle VM root volume to have sufficient space to stage Oracle installation files.

9. Watch the following video:

## Automation parameter files

Ansible playbook executes database installation and configuration tasks with predefined parameters. For this Oracle automation solution, there are three user-defined parameter files that need user input before playbook execution.

- `hosts` - define targets that the automation playbook is running against.
- `vars/vars.yml` - the global variable file that defines variables that apply to all targets.
- `host_vars/host_name.yml` - the local variable file that defines variables that apply only to a named target. In our use case, these are the Oracle DB servers.

In addition to these user-defined variable files, there are several default variable files that contain default parameters that do not require change unless necessary. The following sections show how to configure the user-defined variable files.

## Parameter files configuration





```
#####
#####

# Enter RHEL subscription to enable repo
redhat_sub_username: xxxxxxxx
redhat_sub_password: "xxxxxxx"

#####
#####
###           Oracle DB env specific config variables
###
#####
#####

# Enter Database domain name
db_domain: solutions.netapp.com

# Enter initial password for all required Oracle passwords. Change
them after installation.
initial_pwd_all: xxxxxxxx
```

### 3. Local DB server host\_vars/host\_name.yml configuration such as ora\_01.yml, ora\_02.yml ...

```
# User configurable Oracle host specific parameters

# Enter container database SID. By default, a container DB is
created with 3 PDBs within the CDB
oracle_sid: NTAP1

# Enter database shared memory size or SGA. CDB is created with SGA
at 75% of memory_limit, MB. The grand total of SGA should not exceed
75% available RAM on node.
memory_limit: 8192
```

## Playbook execution

There are a total of six playbooks in the automation toolkit. Each performs different task blocks and serves different purposes.

```
0-all_playbook.yml - execute playbooks from 1-4 in one playbook run.
1-ansible_requirements.yml - set up Ansible controller with required
libs and collections.
2-linux_config.yml - execute Linux kernel configuration on Oracle DB
servers.
3-ontap_config.yml - configure ONTAP svm/volumes/luns for Oracle
database and grant DB server access to luns.
4-oracle_config.yml - install and configure Oracle on DB servers for
grid infrastructure and create a container database.
5-destroy.yml - optional to undo the environment to dismantle all.
```

There are three options to run the playbooks with the following commands.

1. Execute all deployment playbooks in one combined run.

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 0-all_playbook.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml
```

2. Execute playbooks one at a time with the number sequence from 1-4.

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 1-ansible_requirements.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml
```

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 2-linux_config.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml
```

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 3-ontap_config.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml
```

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 4-oracle_config.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml
```

3. Execute 0-all\_playbook.yml with a tag.

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 0-all_playbook.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml -t ansible_requirements
```

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 0-all_playbook.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml -t linux_config
```

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 0-all_playbook.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml -t ontap_config
```

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 0-all_playbook.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml -t oracle_config
```

#### 4. Undo the environment

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts 5-destroy.yml -u ec2-user -e
@vars/vars.yml
```

### Post execution validation

After the playbook run, login to the Oracle DB server as oracle user to validate that Oracle grid infrastructure and database are created successfully. Following is an example of Oracle database validation on host ora\_01.

### 1. Validate Oracle container database on EC2 instance

```
[admin@ansiblectl na_oracle_deploy_iscsi]$ ssh -i ora_01.pem ec2-
user@172.30.15.40
Last login: Fri Dec  8 17:14:21 2023 from 10.61.180.18
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ uname -a
Linux ip-172-30-15-40.ec2.internal 4.18.0-372.9.1.el8.x86_64 #1 SMP
Fri Apr 15 22:12:19 EDT 2022 x86_64 x86_64 x86_64 GNU/Linux

[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ sudo su
[root@ip-172-30-15-40 ec2-user]# su - oracle
Last login: Fri Dec  8 16:25:52 UTC 2023 on pts/0
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Fri Dec 8 18:18:20 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> select name, open_mode, log_mode from v$database;

NAME          OPEN_MODE          LOG_MODE
-----
NTAP1         READ WRITE        ARCHIVELOG

SQL> show pdbs

      CON_ID  CON_NAME          OPEN MODE  RESTRICTED
-----
          2  PDB$SEED          READ ONLY  NO
          3  NTAP1_PDB1        READ WRITE NO
          4  NTAP1_PDB2        READ WRITE NO
          5  NTAP1_PDB3        READ WRITE NO

SQL> select name from v$datafile;

NAME
```

```
-----  
+DATA/NTAP1/DATAFILE/system.257.1155055419  
+DATA/NTAP1/DATAFILE/sysaux.258.1155055463  
+DATA/NTAP1/DATAFILE/undotbs1.259.1155055489  
+DATA/NTAP1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/system.266.115  
5056241  
+DATA/NTAP1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/sysaux.267.115  
5056241  
+DATA/NTAP1/DATAFILE/users.260.1155055489  
+DATA/NTAP1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/undotbs1.268.1  
155056241  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AAFA7C6FD2E5E063280F1EACFBE0/DATAFILE/system.272.115  
5057059  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AAFA7C6FD2E5E063280F1EACFBE0/DATAFILE/sysaux.273.115  
5057059  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AAFA7C6FD2E5E063280F1EACFBE0/DATAFILE/undotbs1.271.1  
155057059  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AAFA7C6FD2E5E063280F1EACFBE0/DATAFILE/users.275.1155  
057075
```

NAME

```
-----  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AC0089ACD352E063280F1EAC12BD/DATAFILE/system.277.115  
5057075  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AC0089ACD352E063280F1EAC12BD/DATAFILE/sysaux.278.115  
5057075  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AC0089ACD352E063280F1EAC12BD/DATAFILE/undotbs1.276.1  
155057075  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03AC0089ACD352E063280F1EAC12BD/DATAFILE/users.280.1155  
057091  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03ACEABA54D386E063280F1EACE573/DATAFILE/system.282.115  
5057091  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03ACEABA54D386E063280F1EACE573/DATAFILE/sysaux.283.115  
5057091  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03ACEABA54D386E063280F1EACE573/DATAFILE/undotbs1.281.1  
155057091  
+DATA/NTAP1/0C03ACEABA54D386E063280F1EACE573/DATAFILE/users.285.1155  
057105
```

19 rows selected.

```
SQL> select name from v$controlfile;
```

NAME

```
-----  
+DATA/NTAP1/CONTROLFILE/current.261.1155055529  
+LOGS/NTAP1/CONTROLFILE/current.256.1155055529
```

```
SQL> select member from v$logfile;
```

```
MEMBER  
-----
```

```
-----  
+DATA/NTAP1/ONLINELOG/group_3.264.1155055531  
+LOGS/NTAP1/ONLINELOG/group_3.259.1155055539  
+DATA/NTAP1/ONLINELOG/group_2.263.1155055531  
+LOGS/NTAP1/ONLINELOG/group_2.257.1155055539  
+DATA/NTAP1/ONLINELOG/group_1.262.1155055531  
+LOGS/NTAP1/ONLINELOG/group_1.258.1155055539
```

```
6 rows selected.
```

```
SQL> exit
```

```
Disconnected from Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release  
19.0.0.0.0 - Production  
Version 19.18.0.0.0
```

## 2. Validate Oracle listener.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ lsnrctl status listener
```

```
LSNRCTL for Linux: Version 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on 08-DEC-2023  
18:20:24
```

```
Copyright (c) 1991, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

```
Connecting to (DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP) (HOST=ip-172-30-  
15-40.ec2.internal) (PORT=1521)))
```

```
STATUS of the LISTENER
```

```
-----  
Alias                LISTENER  
Version              TNSLSNR for Linux: Version 19.0.0.0.0 -  
Production  
Start Date           08-DEC-2023 16:26:09  
Uptime               0 days 1 hr. 54 min. 14 sec  
Trace Level          off  
Security             ON: Local OS Authentication  
SNMP                 OFF  
Listener Parameter File
```

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/network/admin/listener.ora
Listener Log File          /u01/app/oracle/diag/tnslsnr/ip-172-30-15-
40/listener/alert/log.xml
Listening Endpoints Summary...
  (DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) (HOST=ip-172-30-15-
40.ec2.internal) (PORT=1521)))
  (DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=ipc) (KEY=EXTPROC1521)))
  (DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcps) (HOST=ip-172-30-15-
40.ec2.internal) (PORT=5500)) (Security=(my_wallet_directory=/u01/app/
oracle/product/19.0.0/NTAP1/admin/NTAP1/xdb_wallet)) (Presentation=HT
TP) (Session=RAW))
Services Summary...
Service "+ASM" has 1 instance(s).
  Instance "+ASM", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "+ASM_DATA" has 1 instance(s).
  Instance "+ASM", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "+ASM_LOGS" has 1 instance(s).
  Instance "+ASM", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "0c03aafa7c6fd2e5e063280f1eacfb0.solutions.netapp.com" has
1 instance(s).
  Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "0c03ac0089acd352e063280f1eac12bd.solutions.netapp.com" has
1 instance(s).
  Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "0c03aceaba54d386e063280f1eace573.solutions.netapp.com" has
1 instance(s).
  Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "NTAP1.solutions.netapp.com" has 1 instance(s).
  Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "NTAP1XDB.solutions.netapp.com" has 1 instance(s).
  Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "ntap1_pdb1.solutions.netapp.com" has 1 instance(s).
  Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "ntap1_pdb2.solutions.netapp.com" has 1 instance(s).
  Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this
service...
Service "ntap1_pdb3.solutions.netapp.com" has 1 instance(s).
```

Instance "NTAP1", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this service...

The command completed successfully

### 3. Validate the grid infrastructure and resources created.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ asm
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ crsctl check has
CRS-4638: Oracle High Availability Services is online
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ crsctl stat res -t
-----
-----
Name          Target  State         Server          State
details
-----
-----
Local Resources
-----
-----
ora.DATA.dg
          ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
ora.LISTENER.lsnr
          ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
ora.LOGS.dg
          ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
ora.asm
          ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  Started,STABLE
ora.ons
          OFFLINE OFFLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
-----
-----
Cluster Resources
-----
-----
ora.cssd
   1      ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
ora.diskmon
   1      OFFLINE OFFLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
ora.driver.afd
   1      ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
ora.evmd
   1      ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40  STABLE
ora.ntap1.db
   1      ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-40
```



```
Open,HOME=/u01/app/o
```

```
racle/product/19.0.0
```

```
/NTAP1, STABLE
```

```
-----  
-----
```

#### 4. Validate Oracle ASM.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-40 ~]$ asmcmd  
ASMCMD> lsdg  
State      Type      Rebal  Sector  Logical_Sector  Block      AU  
Total_MB   Free_MB   Req_mir_free_MB  Usable_file_MB  Offline_disks  
Voting_files  Name  
MOUNTED    EXTERN    N       512     512      4096     4194304  
163840     155376   0       0       155376   0  
N DATA/  
MOUNTED    EXTERN    N       512     512      4096     4194304  
81920     80972   0       0       80972   0  
N LOGS/  
ASMCMDB> lsdsk  
Path  
AFD:ORA_01_DAT1_01  
AFD:ORA_01_DAT1_03  
AFD:ORA_01_DAT2_02  
AFD:ORA_01_DAT2_04  
AFD:ORA_01_LOGS_01  
AFD:ORA_01_LOGS_02  
ASMCMDB> afd_state  
ASMCMDB-9526: The AFD state is 'LOADED' and filtering is 'ENABLED' on  
host 'ip-172-30-15-40.ec2.internal'  
ASMCMDB> exit
```

#### 5. Login to Oracle Enterprise Manager Express to validate database.

Not secure | <https://172.30.15.40:5500/em/login>

# ORACLE ENTERPRISE MANAGER DATABASE EXPRESS

Username

Password

Container Name

[Log in](#)

ORACLE

Copyright 2013, 2020, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Not secure | <https://172.30.15.40:5500/em/shell>

ORACLE Enterprise Manager Database Express

NTAP1 (19.18.0.0.0) Performance Storage

## Database Home

Time Zone: Browser (GMT-00:00) 1 min Auto-Refresh Refresh

### Status

Up Time 1 hours, 21 minutes, 12 seconds

Type **Single Instance (NTAP1)**  
CDB (3 PDB(s))

Version 19.18.0.0.0 Enterprise Edition

Platform Name Linux x86 64-bit

Thread 1

Archiver Started

Last Backup Time N/A

Incident(s) 5

### Performance

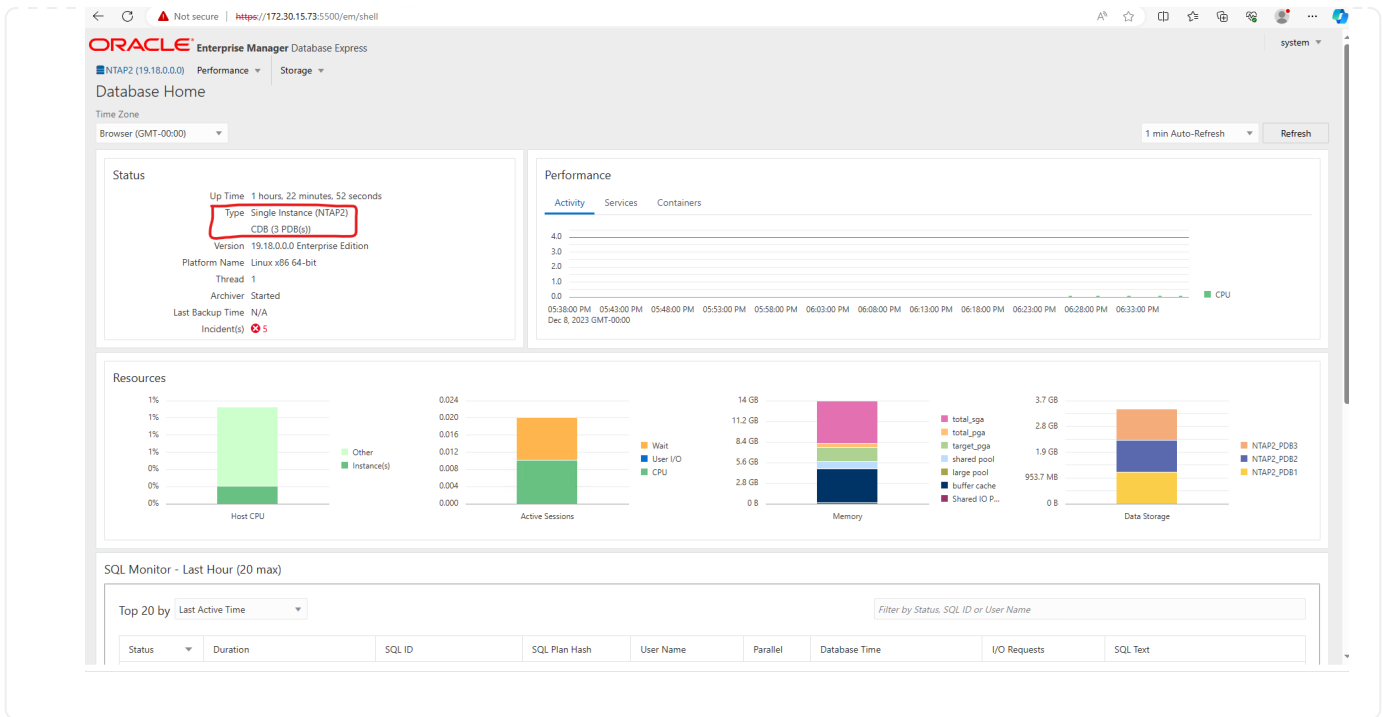
Activity Services Containers

### Resources

### SQL Monitor - Last Hour (20 max)

Top 20 by Last Active Time Filter by Status: SQL ID or User Name

Status	Duration	SQL ID	SQL Plan Hash	User Name	Parallel	Database Time	I/O Requests	SQL Text
--------	----------	--------	---------------	-----------	----------	---------------	--------------	----------



## Oracle backup, restore, and clone with SnapCenter

Refer to TR-4979 [Simplified, self-managed Oracle in VMware Cloud on AWS with guest-mounted FSx ONTAP](#) section Oracle backup, restore, and clone with SnapCenter for details on setting up SnapCenter and executing the database backup, restore, and clone workflows.

## Where to find additional information

To learn more about the information described in this document, review the following documents and/or websites:

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

<https://aws.amazon.com/fsx/netapp-ontap/>

- Amazon EC2

[https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc\\_channel=ps&s\\_kwcid=AL14422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef\\_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAjzSrdqwQrghn6I71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw\\_wcB:G:s&s\\_kwcid=AL14422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2](https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc_channel=ps&s_kwcid=AL14422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAjzSrdqwQrghn6I71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw_wcB:G:s&s_kwcid=AL14422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2)

- Installing Oracle Grid Infrastructure for a Standalone Server with a New Database Installation

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-oracle-grid-infrastructure-for-a-standalone-server-with-a-new-database-installation.html#GUID-0B1CEE8C-C893-46AA-8A6A-7B5FAAEC72B3>

- Installing and Configuring Oracle Database Using Response Files

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-and-configuring-oracle->

- Use Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.2 with ONTAP

[https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/ontap-sanhost/hu\\_rhel\\_82.html#all-san-array-configurations](https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/ontap-sanhost/hu_rhel_82.html#all-san-array-configurations)

# TR-4979: Simplified, Self-managed Oracle in VMware Cloud on AWS with guest-mounted FSx ONTAP

Allen Cao, Niyaz Mohamed, NetApp

## Purpose

Enterprises have been running Oracle on VMware in private data centers for decades. VMware Cloud (VMC) on AWS provides a push-button solution to bring VMware's enterprise-class Software-Defined Data Center (SDDC) software to the AWS Cloud's dedicated, elastic, bare-metal infrastructure. AWS FSx ONTAP offers premium storage to VMC SDDC and a data fabric that enables customers to run business-critical applications such as Oracle across vSphere®-based private, public, and hybrid cloud environments, with optimized access to AWS services. Whether it is an existing or new Oracle workload, VMC on AWS provides a familiar, simplified, and self-managed Oracle environment on VMware with all the benefits of AWS cloud while deferring all platform management and optimization to VMware.

This documentation demonstrates the deployment and protection of an Oracle database in a VMC environment with Amazon FSx ONTAP as primary database storage. Oracle database can be deployed to VMC on FSx storage as direct VM guest-mounted LUNs or NFS-mounted VMware VMDK datastore disks. This technical report focuses on Oracle database deployment as direct guest-mounted FSx storage to VMs in the VMC cluster with the iSCSI protocol and Oracle ASM. We also demonstrate how to use the NetApp SnapCenter UI tool to backup, restore, and clone an Oracle database for dev/test or other use cases for storage-efficient database operation in the VMC on AWS.

This solution addresses the following use cases:

- Oracle database deployment in VMC on AWS with Amazon FSx ONTAP as primary database storage
- Oracle database backup and restore in VMC on AWS using NetApp SnapCenter tool
- Oracle database clone for dev/test or other use cases in VMC on AWS using NetApp SnapCenter tool

## Audience

This solution is intended for the following people:

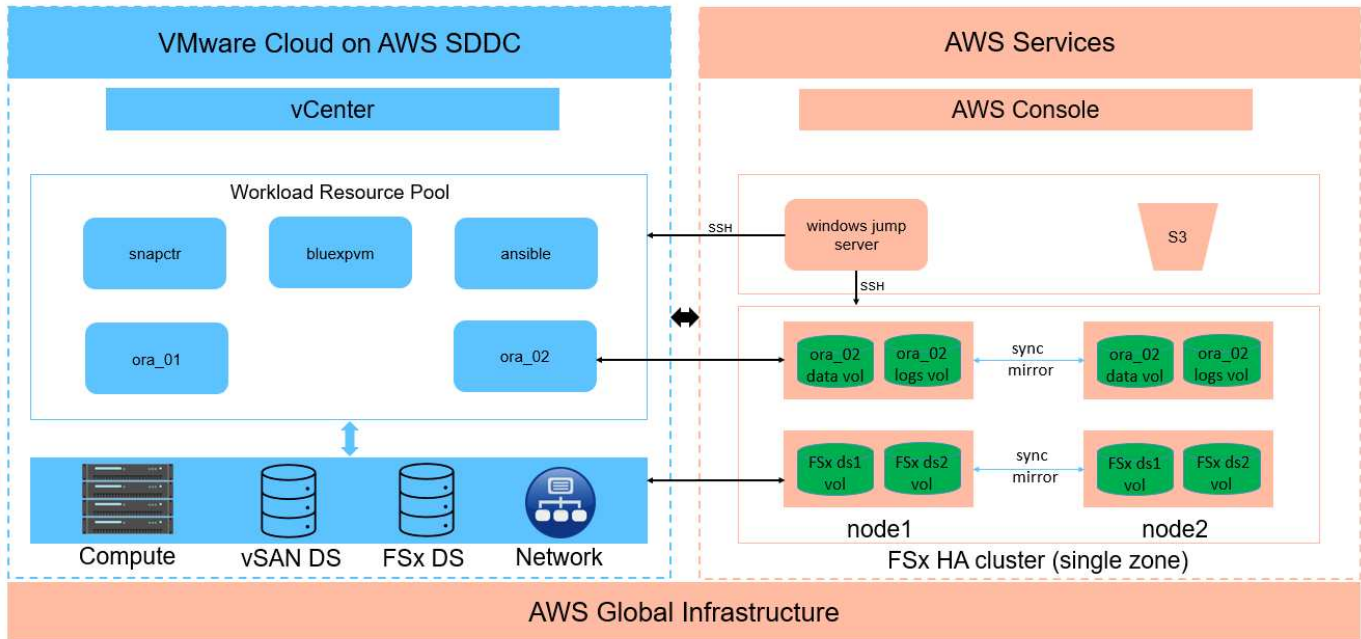
- A DBA who would like to deploy Oracle in VMC on AWS with Amazon FSx ONTAP
- A database solution architect who would like to test Oracle workloads in VMC on the AWS cloud
- A storage administrator who would like to deploy and manage an Oracle database deployed to VMC on AWS with Amazon FSx ONTAP
- An application owner who would like to stand up an Oracle database in VMC on the AWS cloud

## Solution test and validation environment

The testing and validation of this solution was performed in a lab environment with VMC on AWS that might not match the final deployment environment. For more information, see the section [\[Key Factors for Deployment](#)

Architecture

Oracle Database Deployment in VMware Cloud on AWS with Amazon FSx ONTAP 



Hardware and software components

Hardware

FSx ONTAP storage	Current version offered by AWS	One FSx ONTAP HA cluster in the same VPC and availability zone as VMC
VMC SDDC cluster	Amazon EC2 i3.metal single node/Intel Xeon E5-2686 CPU,36 cores/512G RAM	10.37 TB vSAN storage

Software

RedHat Linux	RHEL-8.6, 4.18.0-372.9.1.el8.x86_64 kernel	Deployed RedHat subscription for testing
Windows Server	2022 Standard, 10.0.20348 Build 20348	Hosting SnapCenter server
Oracle Grid Infrastructure	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle Database	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip

Oracle OPatch	Version 12.2.0.1.36	Latest patch p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
SnapCenter Server	Version 4.9P1	Workgroup deployment
BlueXP backup and recovery for VMs	Release 1.0	Deployed as an ova vSphere plugin VM
VMware vSphere	Version 8.0.1.00300	VMware Tools, Version: 11365 - Linux, 12352 - Windows
Open JDK	Version java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64	SnapCenter plugin requirement on DB VMs

## Oracle database configuration in VMC on AWS

Server	Database	DB Storage
ora_01	cdb1(cdb1_pdb1,cdb1_pdb2,cdb1_pdb3)	VMDK datastore on FSx ONTAP
ora_01	cdb2(cdb2_pdb)	VMDK datastore on FSx ONTAP
ora_02	cdb3(cdb3_pdb1,cdb3_pdb2,cdb3_pdb3)	Direct guest mounted FSx ONTAP
ora_02	cdb4(cdb4_pdb)	Direct guest mounted FSx ONTAP

## Key factors for deployment consideration

- **FSx to VMC connectivity.** When you deploy your SDDC on VMware Cloud on AWS, it is created within an AWS account and a VPC dedicated to your organization and managed by VMware. You must also connect the SDDC to an AWS account belonging to you, called the customer AWS account. This connection allows your SDDC to access AWS services belonging to your customer account. FSx for ONTAP is an AWS service deployed in your customer account. Once the VMC SDDC is connected to your customer account, FSx storage is available to VMs in VMC SDDC for direct guest mount.
- **FSx storage HA clusters single- or multi-zone deployment.** In these tests and validations, we deployed an FSx HA cluster in a single AWS availability zone. NetApp also recommends deploying FSx for NetApp ONTAP and VMware Cloud on AWS in the same availability zone to achieve better performance and avoid data transfer charges between availability zones.
- **FSx storage cluster sizing.** An Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage file system provides up to 160,000 raw SSD IOPS, up to 4GBps throughput, and a maximum of 192TiB capacity. However, you can size the cluster in terms of provisioned IOPS, throughput, and storage limit (minimum 1,024 GiB) based on your actual requirements at the time of deployment. The capacity can be adjusted dynamically on the fly without affecting application availability.
- **Oracle data and logs layout.** In our tests and validations, we deployed two ASM disk groups for data and logs respectively. Within the +DATA asm disk group, we provisioned four LUNs in a data volume. Within the +LOGS asm disk group, we provisioned two LUNs in a log volume. In general, multiple LUNs laid out within an Amazon FSx for ONTAP volume provide better performance.
- **iSCSI configuration.** The database VMs in VMC SDDC connect to FSx storage with the iSCSI protocol. It is important to gauge the Oracle database peak I/O throughput requirement by carefully analyzing the Oracle AWR report to determine the application and iSCSI traffic-throughput requirements. NetApp also recommends allocating four iSCSI connections to both FSx iSCSI endpoints with multipath properly

configured.

- **Oracle ASM redundancy level to use for each Oracle ASM disk group that you create.** Because FSx ONTAP already mirrors the storage on the FSx cluster level, you should use External Redundancy, which means that the option does not allow Oracle ASM to mirror the contents of the disk group.
- **Database backup.** NetApp provides a SnapCenter software suite for database backup, restore, and cloning with a user-friendly UI interface. NetApp recommends implementing such a management tool to achieve fast (under a minute) SnapShot backup, quick (minutes) database restore, and database clone.

## Solution deployment

The following sections provide step-by-step procedures for Oracle 19c deployment in VMC on AWS with directly mounted FSx ONTAP storage to DB VM in a single node Restart configuration with Oracle ASM as database volume manager.

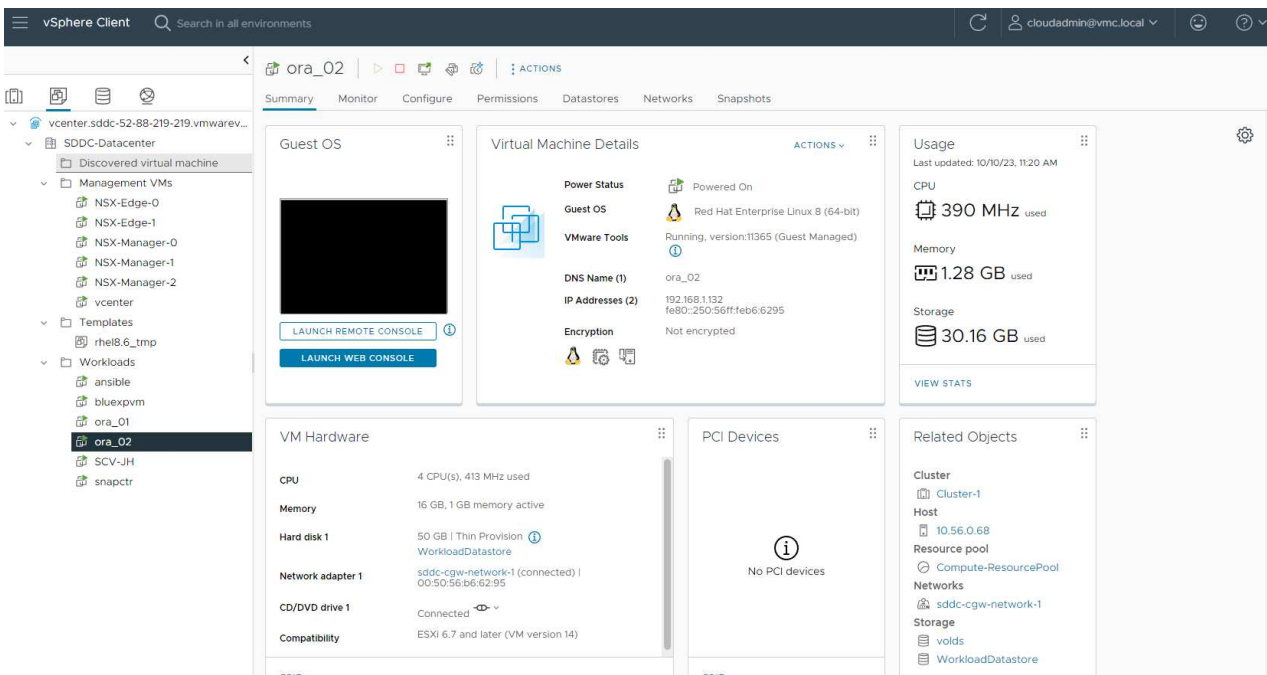
### Prerequisites for deployment

Deployment requires the following prerequisites.

1. A software-defined data center (SDDC) using VMware Cloud on AWS has been created. For detailed instruction on how to create an SDDC in VMC, please refer to VMware documentation [Getting Started With VMware Cloud on AWS](#)
2. An AWS account has been set up, and the necessary VPC and network segments have been created within your AWS account. The AWS account is linked to your VMC SDDC.
3. From the AWS EC2 console, deploying an Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage HA clusters to host the Oracle database volumes. If you are not familiar with the deployment of FSx storage, see the documentation [Creating FSx for ONTAP file systems](#) for step-by-step instructions.
4. The above step can be performed using the following Terraform automation toolkit, which creates an EC2 instance as a jump host for SDDC in VMC access via SSH and an FSx file system. Review instructions carefully and change the variables to suit your environment before execution.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-Automation/na_aws_fsx_ec2_deploy.git
```

5. Build VMs in VMware SDDC on AWS for hosting your Oracle environment to be deployed in VMC. In our demonstration, we have built two Linux VMs as Oracle DB servers, one Windows server for the SnapCenter server, and one optional Linux server as an Ansible controller for automated Oracle installation or configuration if desired. Following is a snapshot of the lab environment for the solution validation.



6. Optionally, NetApp also provides several automation toolkits to run Oracle deployment and configuration when applicable. Refer to [DB Automation Toolkits](#) for more information.



Ensure that you have allocated at least 50G in Oracle VM root volume in order to have sufficient space to stage Oracle installation files.



## DB VM kernel configuration

With the prerequisites provisioned, login to the Oracle VM as an admin user via SSH and sudo to the root user to configure the Linux kernel for Oracle installation. Oracle install files can be staged in an AWS S3 bucket and transferred into the VM.

1. Create a staging directory `/tmp/archive` folder and set the `777` permission.

```
mkdir /tmp/archive
```

```
chmod 777 /tmp/archive
```

2. Download and stage the Oracle binary installation files and other required rpm files to the `/tmp/archive` directory.

See the following list of installation files to be staged in `/tmp/archive` on the DB VM.

```
[admin@ora_02 ~]$ ls -l /tmp/archive/
total 10539364
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin      19112 Oct  4 17:04 compat-
libcap1-1.10-7.el7.x86_64.rpm
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin  3059705302 Oct  4 17:10
LINUX.X64_193000_db_home.zip
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin  2889184573 Oct  4 17:11
LINUX.X64_193000_grid_home.zip
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin    589145 Oct  4 17:04
netapp_linux_unified_host_utilities-7-1.x86_64.rpm
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin    31828 Oct  4 17:04 oracle-
database-preinstall-19c-1.0-2.el8.x86_64.rpm
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin  2872741741 Oct  4 17:12
p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin  1843577895 Oct  4 17:13
p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin  124347218 Oct  4 17:13
p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
-rw-rw-r--. 1 admin admin    257136 Oct  4 17:04
policycoreutils-python-utils-2.9-9.el8.noarch.rpm
[admin@ora_02 ~]$
```

3. Install Oracle 19c preinstall RPM, which satisfies most kernel configuration requirements.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/oracle-database-preinstall-19c-1.0-
2.el8.x86_64.rpm
```

4. Download and install the missing `compat-libcap1` in Linux 8.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/compat-libcap1-1.10-7.el7.x86_64.rpm
```

5. From NetApp, download and install NetApp host utilities.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/netapp_linux_unified_host_utilities-7-1.x86_64.rpm
```

6. Install `policycoreutils-python-utils`.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/policycoreutils-python-utils-2.9-9.el8.noarch.rpm
```

7. Install open JDK version 1.8.

```
yum install java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64
```

8. Install iSCSI initiator utils.

```
yum install iscsi-initiator-utils
```

9. Install `sg3_utils`.

```
yum install sg3_utils
```

10. Install `device-mapper-multipath`.

```
yum install device-mapper-multipath
```

11. Disable transparent hugepages in the current system.

```
echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled
```

```
echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag
```

12. Add the following lines in `/etc/rc.local` to disable `transparent_hugepage` after reboot.

```
vi /etc/rc.local
```

```
# Disable transparent hugepages
    if test -f /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled;
then
    echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled
fi
    if test -f /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag;
then
    echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag
fi
```

13. Disable selinux by changing `SELINUX=enforcing` to `SELINUX=disabled`. You must reboot the host to make the change effective.

```
vi /etc/sysconfig/selinux
```

14. Add the following lines to `limit.conf` to set the file descriptor limit and stack size.

```
vi /etc/security/limits.conf
```

```
*          hard    nofile    65536
*          soft    stack     10240
```

15. Add swap space to DB VM if there is no swap space configured with this instruction: [How do I allocate memory to work as swap space in an Amazon EC2 instance by using a swap file?](#) The exact amount of space to add depends on the size of RAM up to 16G.
16. Change `node.session.timeo.replacement_timeout` in the `iscsi.conf` configuration file from 120 to 5 seconds.

```
vi /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf
```

17. Enable and start the iSCSI service on the EC2 instance.

```
systemctl enable iscsid
```

```
systemctl start iscsid
```

18. Retrieve the iSCSI initiator address to be used for database LUN mapping.

```
cat /etc/iscsi/initiatorname.iscsi
```

19. Add the asm groups for asm management user (oracle).

```
groupadd asmadmin
```

```
groupadd asmdba
```

```
groupadd asmoper
```

20. Modify the oracle user to add asm groups as secondary groups (the oracle user should have been created after Oracle preinstall RPM installation).

```
usermod -a -G asmadmin oracle
```

```
usermod -a -G asmdba oracle
```

```
usermod -a -G asmoper oracle
```

21. Stop and disable the Linux firewall if it is active.

```
systemctl stop firewalld
```

```
systemctl disable firewalld
```

22. Enable password-less sudo for admin user by uncommenting # %wheel ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: ALL line in /etc/sudoers file. Change the file permission to make the edit.

```
chmod 640 /etc/sudoers
```

```
vi /etc/sudoers
```

```
chmod 440 /etc/sudoers
```

23. Reboot the EC2 instance.

### **Provision and map FSx ONTAP LUNs to the DB VM**

Provision three volumes from the command line by login to FSx cluster as fsxadmin user via ssh and FSx cluster management IP. Create LUNs within the volumes to host the Oracle database binary, data, and logs files.

1. Log into the FSx cluster through SSH as the fsxadmin user.

```
ssh fsxadmin@10.49.0.74
```

2. Execute the following command to create a volume for the Oracle binary.

```
vol create -volume ora_02_biny -aggregate aggr1 -size 50G -state  
online -type RW -snapshot-policy none -tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

3. Execute the following command to create a volume for Oracle data.

```
vol create -volume ora_02_data -aggregate aggr1 -size 100G -state  
online -type RW -snapshot-policy none -tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

4. Execute the following command to create a volume for Oracle logs.

```
vol create -volume ora_02_logs -aggregate aggr1 -size 100G -state  
online -type RW -snapshot-policy none -tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

5. Validate the volumes created.

```
vol show ora*
```

Output from the command:

```
FsxId0c00cec8dad373fd1::> vol show ora*  
Vserver   Volume           Aggregate      State      Type      Size  
Available Used%  
-----  
nim       ora_02_biny     aggr1         online    RW        50GB  
22.98GB  51%  
nim       ora_02_data     aggr1         online    RW        100GB  
18.53GB  80%  
nim       ora_02_logs     aggr1         online    RW        50GB  
7.98GB   83%
```

6. Create a binary LUN within the database binary volume.

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_02_biny/ora_02_biny_01 -size 40G -ostype linux
```

7. Create data LUNs within the database data volume.

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_01 -size 20G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_02 -size 20G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_03 -size 20G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_04 -size 20G -ostype linux
```

8. Create log LUNs within the database logs volume.

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_logs_01 -size 40G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_logs_02 -size 40G -ostype linux
```

9. Create an igroup for the EC2 instance with the initiator retrieved from step 14 of the EC2 kernel configuration above.

```
igroup create -igroup ora_02 -protocol iscsi -ostype linux  
-initiator iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:f65fed7641c2
```

10. Map the LUNs to the igroup created above. Increment the LUN ID sequentially for each additional LUN.



```

lun map -path /vol/ora_02_biny/ora_02_biny_01 -igroup ora_02
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 0
lun map -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_01 -igroup ora_02
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 1
lun map -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_02 -igroup ora_02
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 2
lun map -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_03 -igroup ora_02
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 3
lun map -path /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_04 -igroup ora_02
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 4
lun map -path /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_logs_01 -igroup ora_02
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 5
lun map -path /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_logs_02 -igroup ora_02
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 6

```

## 11. Validate the LUN mapping.

```
mapping show
```

This is expected to return:

```

FsxId0c00cec8dad373fd1::> mapping show
(lun mapping show)
Vserver      Path                                          Igroup    LUN ID
Protocol
-----
-----
nim          /vol/ora_02_biny/ora_02_u01_01           ora_02     0
iscsi
nim          /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_01           ora_02     1
iscsi
nim          /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_02           ora_02     2
iscsi
nim          /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_03           ora_02     3
iscsi
nim          /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_04           ora_02     4
iscsi
nim          /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_u03_01           ora_02     5
iscsi
nim          /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_u03_02           ora_02     6
iscsi

```

**DB VM storage configuration**

Now, import and set up the FSx ONTAP storage for the Oracle grid infrastructure and database installation on the VMC database VM.

1. Login to the DB VM via SSH as the admin user using Putty from Windows jump server.
2. Discover the FSx iSCSI endpoints using either SVM iSCSI IP address. Change to your environment-specific portal address.

```
sudo iscsiadm iscsiadm --mode discovery --op update --type
sendtargets --portal 10.49.0.12
```

3. Establish iSCSI sessions by logging into each target.

```
sudo iscsiadm --mode node -l all
```

The expected output from the command is:

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ sudo iscsiadm --mode node -l all
Logging in to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:
10.49.0.12,3260]
Logging in to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:
10.49.0.186,3260]
Login to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:
10.49.0.12,3260] successful.
Login to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:
10.49.0.186,3260] successful.
```

4. View and validate a list of active iSCSI sessions.

```
sudo iscsiadm --mode session
```

Return the iSCSI sessions.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ sudo iscsiadm --mode session
tcp: [1] 10.49.0.186:3260,1028 iqn.1992-
08.com.netapp:sn.545a38bf06ac11ee8503e395ab90d704:vs.3 (non-flash)
tcp: [2] 10.49.0.12:3260,1029 iqn.1992-
08.com.netapp:sn.545a38bf06ac11ee8503e395ab90d704:vs.3 (non-flash)
```

5. Verify that the LUNs were imported into the host.

```
sudo sanlun lun show
```

This will return a list of Oracle LUNs from FSx.

```
[admin@ora_02 ~]$ sudo sanlun lun show
controller(7mode/E-Series)/
device          host          lun
vserver(cDOT/FlashRay)  lun-pathname
filename        adapter      protocol    size    product
-----
nim             /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_u03_02
/dev/sdo       host34       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_u03_01
/dev/sdn       host34       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_04
/dev/sdm       host34       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_03
/dev/sdl       host34       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_02
/dev/sdk       host34       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_01
/dev/sdj       host34       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_biny/ora_02_u01_01
/dev/sdi       host34       iSCSI       40g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_u03_02
/dev/sdh       host33       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_u03_01
/dev/sdg       host33       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_04
/dev/sdf       host33       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_03
/dev/sde       host33       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_02
/dev/sdd       host33       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_u02_01
/dev/sdc       host33       iSCSI       20g    cDOT
nim             /vol/ora_02_biny/ora_02_u01_01
/dev/sdb       host33       iSCSI       40g    cDOT
```

6. Configure the `multipath.conf` file with following default and blacklist entries.

```
sudo vi /etc/multipath.conf
```

Add following entries:

```
defaults {
    find_multipaths yes
    user_friendly_names yes
}

blacklist {
    devnode "^(ram|raw|loop|fd|md|dm-|sr|scd|st) [0-9]*"
    devnode "^hd[a-z]"
    devnode "^cciss.*"
}
```

7. Start the multipath service.

```
sudo systemctl start multipathd
```

Now multipath devices appear in the `/dev/mapper` directory.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ ls -l /dev/mapper
total 0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root          7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e68512d -> ../dm-0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root          7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685141 -> ../dm-1
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root          7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685142 -> ../dm-2
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root          7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685143 -> ../dm-3
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root          7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685144 -> ../dm-4
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root          7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685145 -> ../dm-5
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root          7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685146 -> ../dm-6
crw----- 1 root root 10, 236 Mar 21 18:19 control
```

8. Log into the FSx ONTAP cluster as the `fsxadmin` user via SSH to retrieve the serial-hex number for each LUN starting with `6c574xxx...`, the HEX number starts with `3600a0980`, which is the AWS vendor ID.

```
lun show -fields serial-hex
```

and return as follow:

```
FsxId02ad7bf3476b741df::> lun show -fields serial-hex
vserver path                               serial-hex
-----
svm_ora /vol/ora_02_biny/ora_02_biny_01 6c574235472455534e68512d
svm_ora /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_01 6c574235472455534e685141
svm_ora /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_02 6c574235472455534e685142
svm_ora /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_03 6c574235472455534e685143
svm_ora /vol/ora_02_data/ora_02_data_04 6c574235472455534e685144
svm_ora /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_logs_01 6c574235472455534e685145
svm_ora /vol/ora_02_logs/ora_02_logs_02 6c574235472455534e685146
7 entries were displayed.
```

9. Update the `/dev/multipath.conf` file to add a user-friendly name for the multipath device.

```
sudo vi /etc/multipath.conf
```

with following entries:

```

multipaths {
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e68512d
        alias         ora_02_biny_01
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685141
        alias         ora_02_data_01
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685142
        alias         ora_02_data_02
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685143
        alias         ora_02_data_03
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685144
        alias         ora_02_data_04
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685145
        alias         ora_02_logs_01
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685146
        alias         ora_02_logs_02
    }
}

```

10. Reboot the multipath service to verify that the devices under `/dev/mapper` have changed to LUN names versus serial-hex IDs.

```
sudo systemctl restart multipathd
```

Check `/dev/mapper` to return as following:

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ ls -l /dev/mapper
total 0
crw----- 1 root root 10, 236 Mar 21 18:19 control
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_02_biny_01 -> ../dm-
0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_02_data_01 -> ../dm-
1
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_02_data_02 -> ../dm-
2
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_02_data_03 -> ../dm-
3
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_02_data_04 -> ../dm-
4
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_02_logs_01 -> ../dm-
5
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_02_logs_02 -> ../dm-
6
```

11. Partition the binary LUN with a single primary partition.

```
sudo fdisk /dev/mapper/ora_02_biny_01
```

12. Format the partitioned binary LUN with an XFS file system.

```
sudo mkfs.xfs /dev/mapper/ora_02_biny_01p1
```

13. Mount the binary LUN to /u01.

```
sudo mkdir /u01
```

```
sudo mount -t xfs /dev/mapper/ora_02_biny_01p1 /u01
```

14. Change /u01 mount point ownership to the oracle user and it's associated primary group.

```
sudo chown oracle:oinstall /u01
```

15. Find the UUID of the binary LUN.

```
sudo blkid /dev/mapper/ora_02_biny_01p1
```



16. Add a mount point to `/etc/fstab`.

```
sudo vi /etc/fstab
```

Add the following line.

```
UUID=d89fb1c9-4f89-4de4-b4d9-17754036d11d    /u01    xfs
defaults,nofail 0    2
```

17. As the root user, add the udev rule for Oracle devices.

```
vi /etc/udev/rules.d/99-oracle-asmdevices.rules
```

Include following entries:

```
ENV{DM_NAME}=="ora*", GROUP=="oinstall", OWNER=="oracle",
MODE=="660"
```

18. As the root user, reload the udev rules.

```
udevadm control --reload-rules
```

19. As the root user, trigger the udev rules.

```
udevadm trigger
```

20. As the root user, reload multipathd.

```
systemctl restart multipathd
```

21. Reboot the EC2 instance host.

## Oracle grid infrastructure installation

1. Log into the DB VM as the admin user via SSH and enable password authentication by uncommenting `PasswordAuthentication yes` and then commenting out `PasswordAuthentication no`.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

2. Restart the sshd service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd
```

3. Reset the Oracle user password.

```
sudo passwd oracle
```

4. Log in as the Oracle Restart software owner user (oracle). Create an Oracle directory as follows:

```
mkdir -p /u01/app/oracle
```

```
mkdir -p /u01/app/oraInventory
```

5. Change the directory permission setting.

```
chmod -R 775 /u01/app
```

6. Create a grid home directory and change to it.

```
mkdir -p /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid
```

```
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid
```

7. Unzip the grid installation files.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/LINUX.X64_193000_grid_home.zip
```

8. From grid home, delete the OPatch directory.

```
rm -rf OPatch
```

9. From grid home, unzip p6880880\_190000\_Linux-x86-64.zip.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

10. From grid home, revise cv/admin/cvu\_config, uncomment and replace CV\_ASSUME\_DISTID=OEL5 with CV\_ASSUME\_DISTID=OL7.

```
vi cv/admin/cvu_config
```

11. Prepare a gridsetup.rsp file for silent installation and place the rsp file in the /tmp/archive directory. The rsp file should cover sections A, B, and G with the following information:

```
INVENTORY_LOCATION=/u01/app/oraInventory
oracle.install.option=HA_CONFIG
ORACLE_BASE=/u01/app/oracle
oracle.install.asm.OSDBA=asmdba
oracle.install.asm.OSOPER=asmoper
oracle.install.asm.OSASM=asmadmin
oracle.install.asm.SYSASMPassword="SetPWD"
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.name=DATA
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.redundancy=EXTERNAL
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.AUSize=4
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.disks=/dev/mapper/ora_02_data_01,/dev/mapper/ora_02_data_02,/dev/mapper/ora_02_data_03,/dev/mapper/ora_02_data_04
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.diskDiscoveryString=/dev/mapper/*
oracle.install.asm.monitorPassword="SetPWD"
oracle.install.asm.configureAFD=true
```

12. Log into the EC2 instance as the root user and set ORACLE\_HOME and ORACLE\_BASE.

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/
```

```
export ORACLE_BASE=/tmp
```

```
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/bin
```

13. Initialize disk devices for use with the Oracle ASM filter driver.

```
./asmcmd afd_label DATA01 /dev/mapper/ora_02_data_01 --init
```

```
./asmcmd afd_label DATA02 /dev/mapper/ora_02_data_02 --init
```

```
./asmcmd afd_label DATA03 /dev/mapper/ora_02_data_03 --init
```

```
./asmcmd afd_label DATA04 /dev/mapper/ora_02_data_04 --init
```

```
./asmcmd afd_label LOGS01 /dev/mapper/ora_02_logs_01 --init
```

```
./asmcmd afd_label LOGS02 /dev/mapper/ora_02_logs_02 --init
```

14. Install cvuqdisk-1.0.10-1.rpm.

```
rpm -ivh /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/cv/rpm/cvuqdisk-1.0.10-1.rpm
```

15. Unset \$ORACLE\_BASE.

```
unset ORACLE_BASE
```

16. Log into the EC2 instance as the Oracle user and extract the patch in the /tmp/archive folder.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip -d /tmp/archive
```

17. From grid home /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid and as the oracle user, launch gridSetup.sh for grid infrastructure installation.

```
./gridSetup.sh -applyRU /tmp/archive/34762026/ -silent -responseFile /tmp/archive/gridsetup.rsp
```

18. As root user, execute the following script(s):

```
/u01/app/oraInventory/orainstRoot.sh
```

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/root.sh
```

19. As root user, reload the multipathd.

```
systemctl restart multipathd
```

20. As the Oracle user, execute the following command to complete the configuration:

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/gridSetup.sh -executeConfigTools  
-responseFile /tmp/archive/gridsetup.rsp -silent
```

21. As the Oracle user, create the LOGS disk group.

```
bin/asmca -silent -sysAsmPassword 'yourPWD' -asmsnmpPassword  
'yourPWD' -createDiskGroup -diskGroupName LOGS -disk 'AFD:LOGS*'  
-redundancy EXTERNAL -au_size 4
```

22. As the Oracle user, validate grid services after installation configuration.

```
bin/crsctl stat res -t
```

```
[oracle@ora_02 grid]$ bin/crsctl stat res -t
```

```
-----  
-----  
Name          Target  State          Server          State  
details  
-----  
-----  
Local Resources  
-----  
-----  
ora.DATA.dg  
          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE  
ora.LISTENER.lsnr  
          ONLINE  INTERMEDIATE   ora_02          Not All  
Endpoints Re  
gistered, STABLE  
ora.LOGS.dg  
          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE  
ora.asm  
          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02  
Started, STABLE  
ora.ons  
          OFFLINE OFFLINE          ora_02          STABLE  
-----  
-----  
Cluster Resources  
-----  
-----  
ora.cssd  
    1      ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE  
ora.diskmon  
    1      OFFLINE OFFLINE          STABLE  
ora.driver.afd  
    1      ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE  
ora.evmd  
    1      ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE  
-----  
-----
```

23. Valiate ASM filter driver status.

```

[oracle@ora_02 grid]$ export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid
[oracle@ora_02 grid]$ export ORACLE_SID=+ASM
[oracle@ora_02 grid]$ export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin
[oracle@ora_02 grid]$ asmcmd
ASMCMDB> lsdg
State      Type      Rebal  Sector  Logical_Sector  Block      AU
Total_MB  Free_MB  Req_mir_free_MB  Usable_file_MB  Offline_disks
Voting_files  Name
MOUNTED  EXTERN  N      512     512     4096    4194304
81920    81780      0      81780   0
N  DATA/
MOUNTED  EXTERN  N      512     512     4096    4194304
40960    40852      0      40852   0
N  LOGS/
ASMCMDB> afd_state
ASMCMDB-9526: The AFD state is 'LOADED' and filtering is 'ENABLED' on
host 'ora_02'
ASMCMDB> exit
[oracle@ora_02 grid]$

```

#### 24. Validate HA service status.

```

[oracle@ora_02 bin]$ ./crsctl check has
CRS-4638: Oracle High Availability Services is online

```

## Oracle database installation

1. Log in as the Oracle user and unset `$ORACLE_HOME` and `$ORACLE_SID` if it is set.

```
unset ORACLE_HOME
```

```
unset ORACLE_SID
```

2. Create the Oracle DB home directory and change the directory to it.

```
mkdir /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb3
```

```
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb3
```

3. Unzip the Oracle DB installation files.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/LINUX.X64_193000_db_home.zip
```

4. From the DB home, delete the OPatch directory.

```
rm -rf OPatch
```

5. From DB home, unzip `p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip`.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

6. From DB home, revise `cv/admin/cvu_config` and uncomment and replace `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OEL5` with `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OL7`.

```
vi cv/admin/cvu_config
```

7. From the `/tmp/archive` directory, unpack the DB 19.18 RU patch.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip -d  
/tmp/archive
```

8. Prepare the DB silent install `rsp` file in `/tmp/archive/dbinstall.rsp` directory with the following values:



```
oracle.install.option=INSTALL_DB_SWONLY
UNIX_GROUP_NAME=oinstall
INVENTORY_LOCATION=/u01/app/oraInventory
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb3
ORACLE_BASE=/u01/app/oracle
oracle.install.db.InstallEdition=EE
oracle.install.db.OSDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSOPER_GROUP=oper
oracle.install.db.OSBACKUPDBA_GROUP=oper
oracle.install.db.OSDGDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSKMDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSRACDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.rootconfig.executeRootScript=false
```

9. From cdb3 home /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb3, execute silent software-only DB installation.

```
./runInstaller -applyRU /tmp/archive/34765931/ -silent
-ignorePrereqFailure -responseFile /tmp/archive/dbinstall.rsp
```

10. As root user, run the `root.sh` script after software-only installation.

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1/root.sh
```

11. As oracle user, create the `dbca.rsp` file with the following entries:

```
gdbName=cdb3.demo.netapp.com
sid=cdb3
createAsContainerDatabase=true
numberOfPDBs=3
pdbName=cdb3_pdb
useLocalUndoForPDBs=true
pdbAdminPassword="yourPWD"
templateName=General_Purpose.dbc
sysPassword="yourPWD"
systemPassword="yourPWD"
dbsnmpPassword="yourPWD"
datafileDestination=+DATA
recoveryAreaDestination=+LOGS
storageType=ASM
diskGroupName=DATA
characterSet=AL32UTF8
nationalCharacterSet=AL16UTF16
listeners=LISTENER
databaseType=MULTIPURPOSE
automaticMemoryManagement=false
totalMemory=8192
```

12. As oracle user, launch DB creation with dbca.

```
bin/dbca -silent -createDatabase -responseFile /tmp/archive/dbca.rsp
```

output:

```

Prepare for db operation
7% complete
Registering database with Oracle Restart
11% complete
Copying database files
33% complete
Creating and starting Oracle instance
35% complete
38% complete
42% complete
45% complete
48% complete
Completing Database Creation
53% complete
55% complete
56% complete
Creating Pluggable Databases
60% complete
64% complete
69% complete
78% complete
Executing Post Configuration Actions
100% complete
Database creation complete. For details check the logfiles at:
  /u01/app/oracle/cfgtoollogs/dbca/cdb3.
Database Information:
Global Database Name:cdb3.vmc.netapp.com
System Identifier(SID):cdb3
Look at the log file "/u01/app/oracle/cfgtoollogs/dbca/cdb3/cdb3.log"
for further details.

```

1. Repeat the same procedures from step 2 to create a container database cdb4 in a separate ORACLE\_HOME /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb4 with a single PDB.
2. As Oracle user, validate Oracle Restart HA services after DB creation that all databases (cdb3, cdb4) are registered with HA services.

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/crsctl stat res -t
```

output:

```

[oracle@ora_02 bin]$ ./crsctl stat res -t
-----
-----
Name                Target  State          Server                State

```

details

-----  
-----  
Local Resources  
-----

ora.DATA.dg  
                  ONLINE  ONLINE          ora\_02                  STABLE  
ora.LISTENER.lsnr  
                  ONLINE  INTERMEDIATE  ora\_02                  Not All  
Endpoints Re

gistered, STABLE

ora.LOGS.dg  
                  ONLINE  ONLINE          ora\_02                  STABLE  
ora.asm  
                  ONLINE  ONLINE          ora\_02

Started, STABLE

ora.ons  
                  OFFLINE  OFFLINE          ora\_02                  STABLE  
-----

-----  
-----  
Cluster Resources  
-----

ora.cdb3.db  
      1          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora\_02

Open,HOME=/u01/app/o

racle/product/19.0.0

/cdb3, STABLE

ora.cdb4.db  
      1          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora\_02

Open,HOME=/u01/app/o

racle/product/19.0.0

/cdb4, STABLE

ora.cssd  
      1          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora\_02                  STABLE

ora.diskmon  
      1          OFFLINE  OFFLINE                                  STABLE

ora.driver.afd  
      1          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora\_02                  STABLE

ora.evmd

```
1          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE
-----
-----
```

### 3. Set the Oracle user .bash\_profile.

```
vi ~/.bash_profile
```

Add following entries:

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db3
export ORACLE_SID=db3
export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin
alias asm='export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid;export
ORACLE_SID=+ASM;export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin'
alias cdb3='export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb3;export
ORACLE_SID=cdb3;export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin'
alias cdb4='export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb4;export
ORACLE_SID=cdb4;export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin'
```

### 4. Validate the CDB/PDB created for cdb3.

```
cdb3
```

```
[oracle@ora_02 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Mon Oct 9 08:19:20 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;
```

```
NAME          OPEN_MODE
-----
```

```
CDB3          READ WRITE
```

```
SQL> show pdbs
```

```
CON_ID  CON_NAME                                OPEN MODE  RESTRICTED
-----
```

2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	CDB3_PDB1	READ WRITE	NO
4	CDB3_PDB2	READ WRITE	NO
5	CDB3_PDB3	READ WRITE	NO

```
SQL>
```

```
SQL> select name from v$datafile;
```

```
NAME
-----
```

```
+DATA/CDB3/DATAFILE/system.257.1149420273
+DATA/CDB3/DATAFILE/sysaux.258.1149420317
+DATA/CDB3/DATAFILE/undotbs1.259.1149420343
+DATA/CDB3/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/system.266.1149
421085
+DATA/CDB3/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/sysaux.267.1149
421085
+DATA/CDB3/DATAFILE/users.260.1149420343
+DATA/CDB3/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/undotbs1.268.11
49421085
+DATA/CDB3/06FB206DF15ADEE8E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/system.272.1149
422017
+DATA/CDB3/06FB206DF15ADEE8E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/sysaux.273.1149
422017
+DATA/CDB3/06FB206DF15ADEE8E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/undotbs1.271.11
49422017
+DATA/CDB3/06FB206DF15ADEE8E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/users.275.11494
22033
```

```
NAME
-----
```

```
+DATA/CDB3/06FB21766256DF9AE065025056B66295/DATAFILE/system.277.1149
422033
+DATA/CDB3/06FB21766256DF9AE065025056B66295/DATAFILE/sysaux.278.1149
422033
+DATA/CDB3/06FB21766256DF9AE065025056B66295/DATAFILE/undotbs1.276.11
```

```

49422033
+DATA/CDB3/06FB21766256DF9AE065025056B66295/DATAFILE/users.280.11494
22049
+DATA/CDB3/06FB22629AC1DFD7E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/system.282.1149
422049
+DATA/CDB3/06FB22629AC1DFD7E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/sysaux.283.1149
422049
+DATA/CDB3/06FB22629AC1DFD7E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/undotbs1.281.11
49422049
+DATA/CDB3/06FB22629AC1DFD7E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/users.285.11494
22063

```

19 rows selected.

SQL>

#### 5. Validate the CDB/PDB created for cdb4.

```

cdb4

```

```

[oracle@ora_02 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Mon Oct 9 08:20:26 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;

NAME          OPEN_MODE
-----
CDB4          READ WRITE

SQL> show pdbs

          CON_ID CON_NAME                                OPEN MODE  RESTRICTED
          -----
          2 PDB$SEED                                READ ONLY  NO

```

3 CDB4\_PDB

READ WRITE NO

SQL>

SQL> select name from v\$datafile;

NAME

```
-----  
-----  
+DATA/CDB4/DATAFILE/system.286.1149424943  
+DATA/CDB4/DATAFILE/sysaux.287.1149424989  
+DATA/CDB4/DATAFILE/undotbs1.288.1149425015  
+DATA/CDB4/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/system.295.1149  
425765  
+DATA/CDB4/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/sysaux.296.1149  
425765  
+DATA/CDB4/DATAFILE/users.289.1149425015  
+DATA/CDB4/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/undotbs1.297.11  
49425765  
+DATA/CDB4/06FC3070D5E12C23E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/system.301.1149  
426581  
+DATA/CDB4/06FC3070D5E12C23E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/sysaux.302.1149  
426581  
+DATA/CDB4/06FC3070D5E12C23E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/undotbs1.300.11  
49426581  
+DATA/CDB4/06FC3070D5E12C23E065025056B66295/DATAFILE/users.304.11494  
26597
```

11 rows selected.

6. Login to each cdb as sysdba with sqlplus and set the DB recovery destination size to the +LOGS disk group size for both cdb's.

```
alter system set db_recovery_file_dest_size = 40G scope=both;
```

7. Login to each cdb as sysdba with sqlplus and enable archive log mode with following command sets in sequence.

```
sqlplus /as sysdba
```

```
shutdown immediate;
```

```
startup mount;
```



```
alter database archivelog;
```

```
alter database open;
```

This completes Oracle 19c version 19.18 Restart deployment on an Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage and a VMC DB VM. If desired, NetApp recommends relocating the Oracle control file and online log files to the +LOGS disk group.

## **Oracle backup, restore, and clone with SnapCenter**

### **SnapCenter Setup**

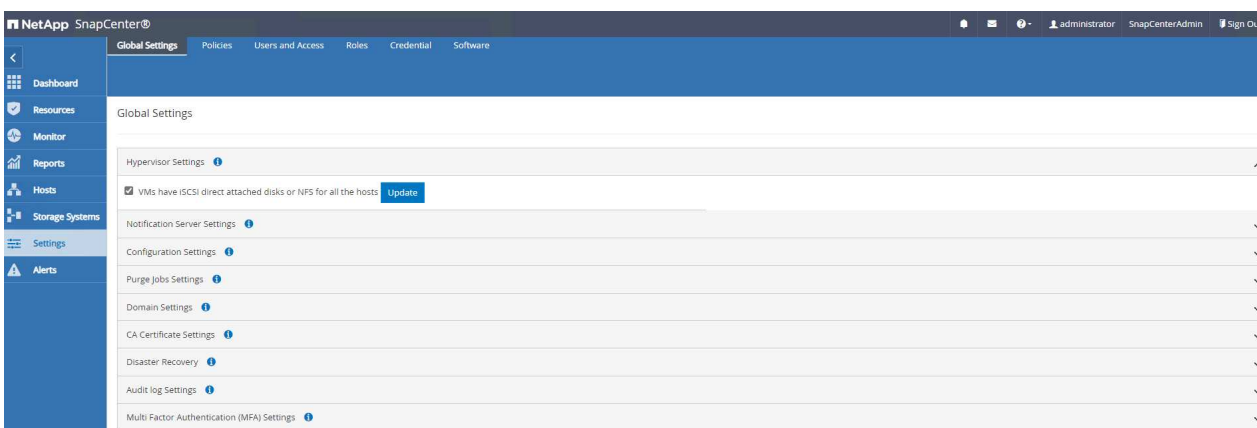
SnapCenter relies on a host-side plug-in on database VM to perform application-aware data protection management activities. For detailed information on NetApp SnapCenter plugin for Oracle, refer to this documentation [What can you do with the Plug-in for Oracle Database](#). The following provides high level steps to setup SnapCenter for Oracle database backup, recovery, and clone.

1. Download the latest version of SnapCenter software from NetApp support site: [NetApp Support Downloads](#).
2. As administrator, install latest java JDK from [Get Java for desktop applications](#) on SnapCenter server Windows host.

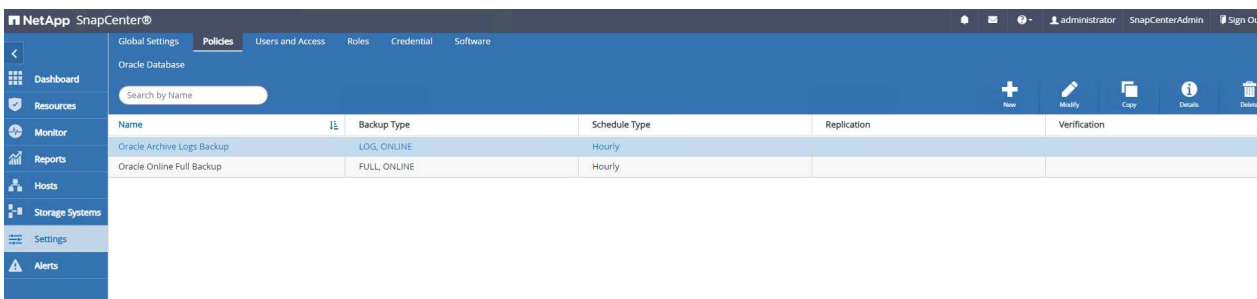


If Windows server is deployed in a domain environment, add a domain user to SnapCenter server local administrators group and run SnapCenter installation with the domain user.

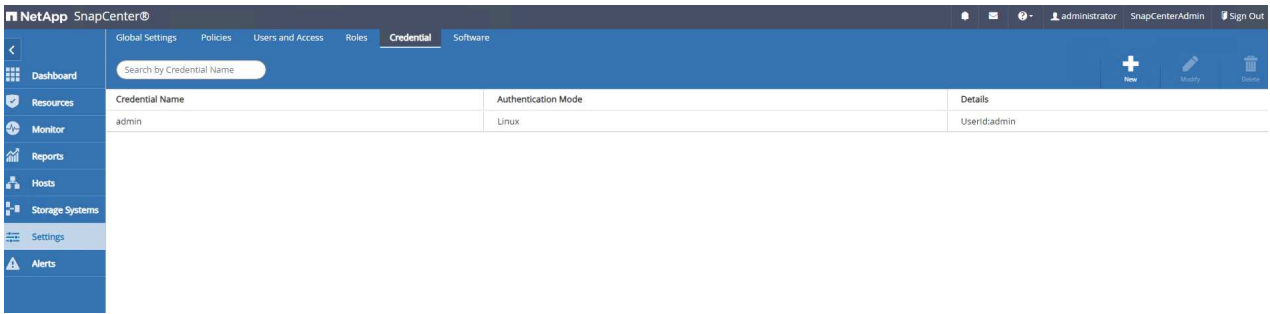
3. Login to SnapCenter UI via HTTPS port 8846 as installation user to configure SnapCenter for Oracle.
4. Update Hypervisor Settings in global settings.



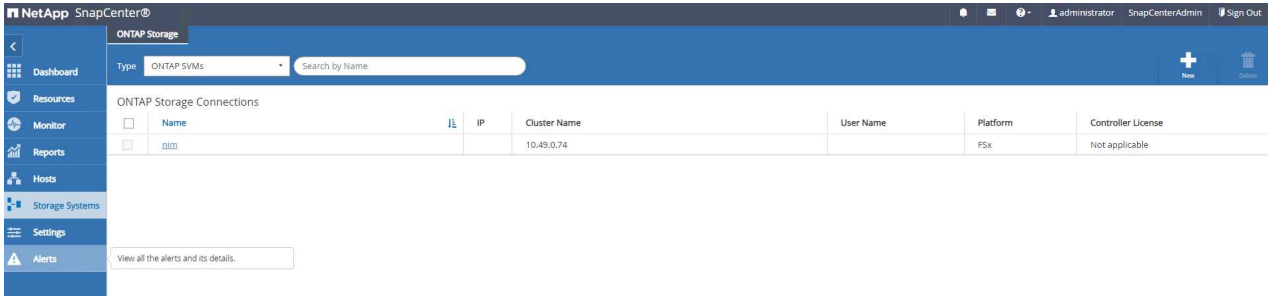
5. Create Oracle database backup policies. Ideally, create a separate archive log backup policy to allow more frequent backup interval to minimize data loss in the event of a failure.



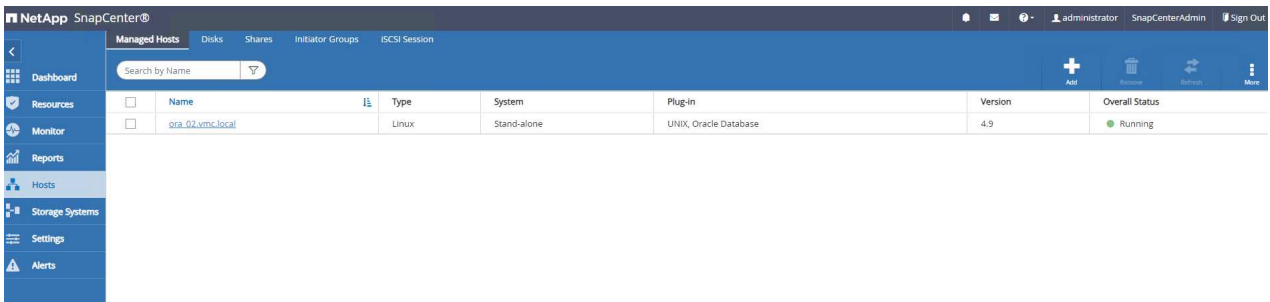
6. Add database server Credential for SnapCenter access to DB VM. The credential should have sudo privilege on a Linux VM or administrator privilege on a Windows VM.



7. Add FSx ONTAP storage cluster to `Storage Systems` with cluster management IP and authenticated via fsxadmin user ID.



8. Add Oracle database VM in VMC to `Hosts` with server credential created in previous step 6.



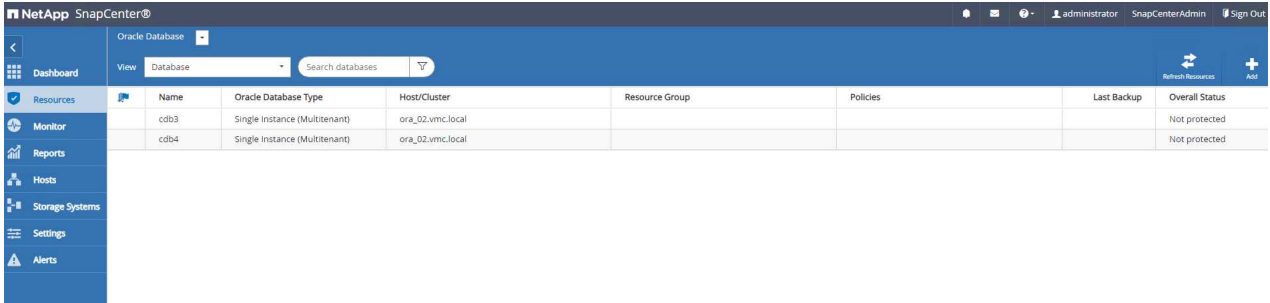
Ensure that the SnapCenter server name can be resolved to the IP address from the DB VM and DB VM name can be resolved to the IP address from the SnapCenter server.

## Database backup



SnapCenter leverages FSx ONTAP volume snapshot for much quicker database backup, restore, or clone compared with traditional RMAN based methodology. The snapshots are application-consistent as the database is put in Oracle backup mode before a snapshot.

1. From the Resources tab, any databases on the VM are auto-discovered after the VM is added to SnapCenter. Initially, the database status shows as Not protected.




2. Create a resources group to backup the database in a logical grouping such as by DB VM etc. In this example, we created an ora\_02\_data group to do a full online database backup for all databases on VM ora\_02. Resources group ora\_02\_log performs the backup of archived logs only on the VM. Creating a resources group also defines a schedule to execute the backup.




3. Resources group backup can also be triggered manually by clicking on Back up Now and executing the backup with the policy defined in the resources group.

Add schedules for policy Oracle Online Full Backup ✕

**Hourly**

Start date  

Expires on  

Repeat every  hours  mins

**i** The schedules are triggered in the SnapCenter Server time zone. ✕

4. The backup job can be monitored at the `Monitor` tab by clicking on the running job.

**Job Details**

Backup of Resource Group 'ora\_01\_data' with policy 'Oracle Online Full Backup'

- ✓ ▾ Backup of Resource Group 'ora\_01\_data' with policy 'Oracle Online Full Backup'
- ✓ ▾ ora\_01.vmc.local
    - ✓ ▶ Prescripts
    - ✓ ▶ Preparing for Oracle Database Backup
    - ✓ ▶ Preparing for File-System Backup
    - ✓ ▶ Backup datafiles and control files
    - ✓ ▶ Backup archive logs
    - ✓ ▶ Finalizing Oracle Database Backup
    - ✓ ▶ Finalizing File-System Backup
    - ✓ ▶ Postscripts
    - ✓ ▶ Data Collection
    - ✓ ▶ Send EMS Messages

Task Name: ora\_01.vmc.local Start Time: 10/07/2023 8:53:24 AM End Time: 10/07/2023 8:54:33 AM

View Logs Cancel job Close

5. After a successful backup, the database status shows the job status and the most recent backup time.

NetApp SnapCenter®

Oracle Database

View Database Search databases

Resources	Name	Oracle Database Type	Host/Cluster	Resource Group	Policies	Last Backup	Overall Status
Monitor	cdb1	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_01.vmc.local	ora_01_data ora_01_logs	Oracle Archive Logs Backup Oracle Online Full Backup	10/07/2023 12:00:25 PM	Backup succeeded
Reports	cdb2	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_01.vmc.local	ora_01_data ora_01_logs	Oracle Archive Logs Backup Oracle Online Full Backup	10/07/2023 12:00:25 PM	Backup succeeded
Hosts	cdb3	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_02.vmc.local	ora_02_data ora_02_logs	Oracle Archive Logs Backup Oracle Online Full Backup	10/07/2023 8:05:25 AM	Backup succeeded
Storage Systems	cdb4	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_02.vmc.local	ora_02_data ora_02_logs	Oracle Archive Logs Backup Oracle Online Full Backup	10/07/2023 8:05:25 AM	Backup succeeded

6. Click on database to review the backup sets for each database.

The screenshot displays the NetApp SnapCenter Oracle Database interface. The top navigation bar includes the NetApp SnapCenter logo, the user 'administrator', and the 'SnapCenterAdmin' role. The main content area is titled 'cdb3 Topology' and features a 'Manage Copies' section with a 'Local copies' indicator showing 22 Backups and 0 Clones. A 'Summary Card' provides a high-level overview: 22 Backups, 8 Data Backups, 14 Log Backups, and 0 Clones. Below this is a 'Primary Backup(s)' table with columns for Backup Name, Count, Type, End Date, Verified, Mounted, RMAN Cataloged, and SCN. The table lists several backup entries, including log and data backups from October 7, 2023.

Backup Name	Count	Type	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN
ora_02_10-07-2023_08.05.02.4105_1	1	Log	10/07/2023 8:05:26 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2928738
ora_02_10-07-2023_07.50.02.4250_1	1	Log	10/07/2023 7:50:27 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2927731
ora_02_10-07-2023_07.45.02.4192_1	1	Log	10/07/2023 7:45:49 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2927497
ora_02_10-07-2023_07.45.02.4192_0	1	Data	10/07/2023 7:45:31 AM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	2927446
ora_02_10-07-2023_07.35.02.3846_1	1	Log	10/07/2023 7:35:25 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2926747
ora_02_10-07-2023_07.20.02.3803_1	1	Log	10/07/2023 7:20:25 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2925995
ora_02_10-07-2023_07.05.02.3948_1	1	Log	10/07/2023 7:05:26 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2924987
ora_02_10-07-2023_06.50.02.3786_1	1	Log	10/07/2023 6:50:26 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2923925

## Database recovery

SnapCenter provides a number of restore and recovery options for Oracle databases from snapshot backup. In this example, we demonstrate a point in time restoration to recover a dropped table by mistake. On VM ora\_02, two databases cdb3, cdb4 share the same +DATA and +LOGS disk groups. Database restoration for one database does not impact the availability of the other database.

1. First, create a test table and insert a row into table to validate a point in time recovery.

```
[oracle@ora_02 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Fri Oct 6 14:15:21 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;

NAME          OPEN_MODE
-----
CDB3          READ WRITE

SQL> show pdbs

          CON_ID CON_NAME                                OPEN MODE  RESTRICTED
-----
          2 PDB$SEED                                READ ONLY  NO
          3 CDB3_PDB1                            READ WRITE NO
          4 CDB3_PDB2                            READ WRITE NO
          5 CDB3_PDB3                            READ WRITE NO

SQL>

SQL> alter session set container=cdb3_pdb1;

Session altered.

SQL> create table test (id integer, dt timestamp, event
varchar(100));

Table created.
```



```
SQL> insert into test values(1, sysdate, 'test oracle recovery on
guest mounted fsx storage to VMC guest vm ora_02');
```

```
1 row created.
```

```
SQL> commit;
```

```
Commit complete.
```

```
SQL> select * from test;
```

```
          ID
-----
DT
-----
EVENT
-----
          1
06-OCT-23 03.18.24.000000 PM
test oracle recovery on guest mounted fsx storage to VMC guest vm
ora_02
```

```
SQL> select current_timestamp from dual;
```

```
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
-----
06-OCT-23 03.18.53.996678 PM -07:00
```

2. We run a manual snapshot backup from SnapCenter. Then drop the table.

```

SQL> drop table test;

Table dropped.

SQL> commit;

Commit complete.

SQL> select current_timestamp from dual;

CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
-----
06-OCT-23 03.26.30.169456 PM -07:00

SQL> select * from test;
select * from test
          *
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-00942: table or view does not exist

```

- From backup set created from last step, take a note of the SCN number of log backup. Click on Restore to launch restore-recover workflow.

The screenshot shows the NetApp SnapCenter interface for an Oracle Database. The main area displays a table of Primary Backup(s) with the following data:

Backup Name	Count	Type	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN
ora_02_10-06-2023_14.22.59.0383_1	1	Log	10/06/2023 2:23:43 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2795205
ora_02_10-06-2023_14.22.59.0383_0	1	Data	10/06/2023 2:23:27 PM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	2795113
ora_02_10-06-2023_14.20.01.8472_1	1	Log	10/06/2023 2:20:24 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2794928
ora_02_10-06-2023_14.05.01.8346_1	1	Log	10/06/2023 2:05:24 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2793950
ora_02_10-06-2023_13.52.09.1111_1	1	Log	10/06/2023 1:52:59 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2792888
ora_02_10-06-2023_13.52.09.1111_0	1	Data	10/06/2023 1:52:43 PM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	2792838

- Choose restore scope.

Restore cdb3 x

**1 Restore Scope**

2 Recovery Scope

3 PreOps

4 PostOps

5 Notification

6 Summary

**Restore Scope** ⓘ

All Datafiles

Pluggable databases (PDBs)

Pluggable database (PDB) tablespaces

Control files

**Database State**

Change database state if needed for restore and recovery

**Restore Mode** ⓘ

Force in place restore

If this check box is not selected and if any of the in place restore criteria is not met, restore will be performed using the connect and copy method. The connect and copy restore method might take time based on the files being restored.

Previous Next

5. Choose recovery scope up to the log SCN from last full database backup.

Restore cdb3

1 Restore Scope

2 Recovery Scope

3 PreOps

4 PostOps

5 Notification

6 Summary

### Choose Recovery Scope

All Logs

Until SCN (System Change Number)

SCN

Date and Time

No recovery

Specify external archive log files locations

*i* After the operation is complete, it is recommended to create a full backup of the Oracle database.

Previous Next

6. Specify any optional pre-scripts to run.

Restore cdb3 x

**1** Restore Scope

**2** Recovery Scope

**3** PreOps

4 PostOps

5 Notification

6 Summary

**Specify optional scripts to run before performing a restore job** ⓘ

Prescript full path

Arguments

Script timeout

7. Specify any optional after-script to run.

Restore cdb3 x

**1** Restore Scope

**2** Recovery Scope

**3** PreOps

**4** PostOps

**5** Notification

**6** Summary

**Specify optional scripts to run after performing a restore job** ⓘ

Postscript full path

Arguments

Open the database or container database in READ-WRITE mode after recovery

8. Send a job report if desired.

Restore cdb3 ×

- 1 Restore Scope
- 2 Recovery Scope
- 3 PreOps
- 4 PostOps
- 5 Notification**
- 6 Summary

**Provide email settings** ⓘ

Email preference:

From:

To:

Subject:

Attach job report

9. Review the summary and click on `Finish` to launch the restoration and recovery.

Restore cdb3
✕

- 1 Restore Scope
- 2 Recovery Scope
- 3 PreOps
- 4 PostOps
- 5 Notification
- 6 Summary

### Summary

Backup name	ora_02_10-06-2023_14.22.59.0383_0
Backup date	10/06/2023 2:23:27 PM
Restore scope	All DataFiles
Recovery scope	Until SCN 2795205
Auxiliary destination	
Options	Change database state if necessary , Open the database or container database in READ-WRITE mode after recovery
Prescript full path	None
Prescript arguments	
Postscript full path	None
Postscript arguments	
Send email	No

Previous
Finish

10. From Oracle Restart grid control, we observe that while cdb3 is under restoration and recovery cdb4 is online and available.

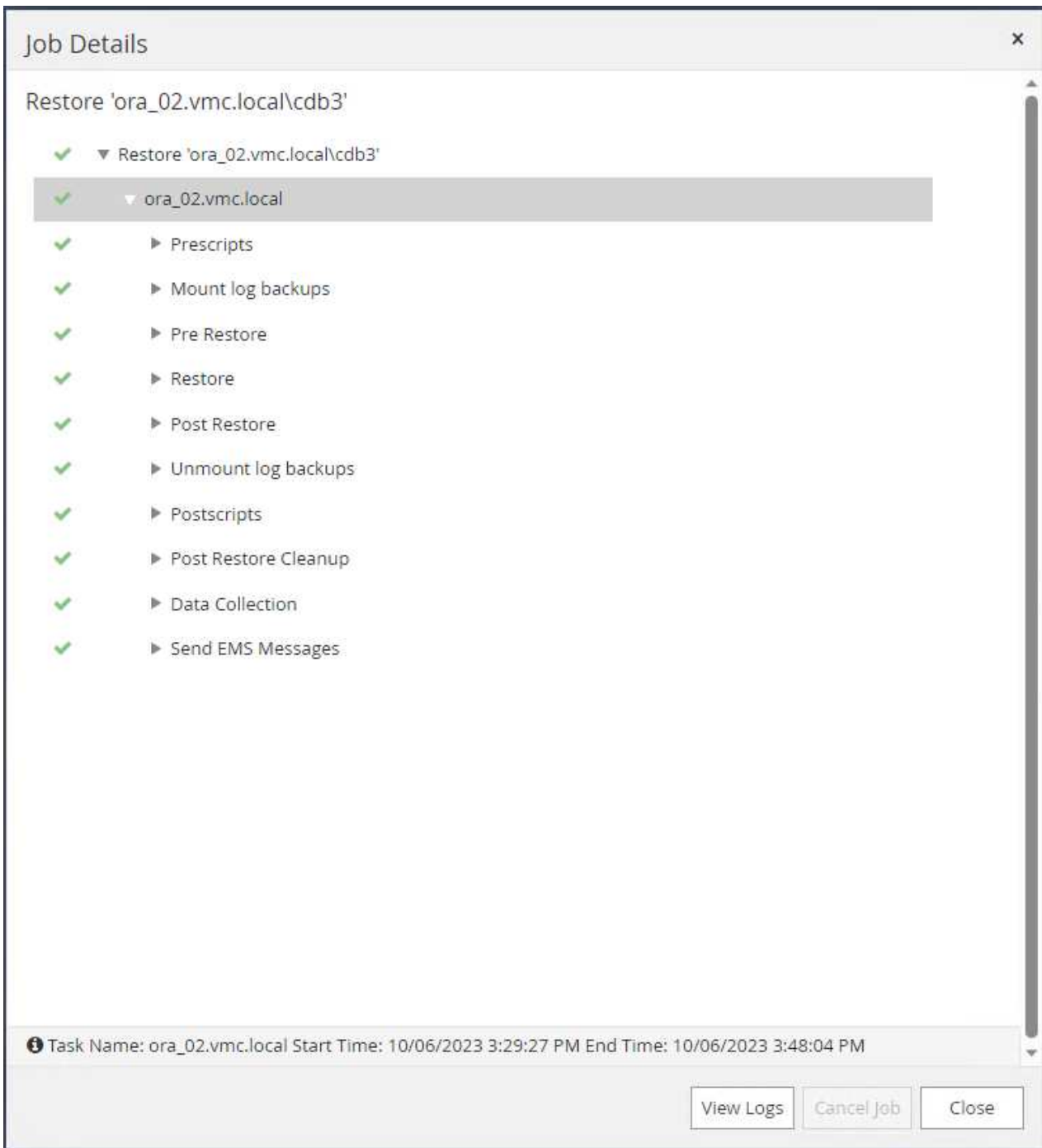


```

[oracle@ora_02 bin]$ ./crsctl stat res -t
-----
Name                Target  State        Server        State details
-----
Local Resources
-----
ora.DATA.dg         ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        STABLE
ora.LISTENER.lsnr   ONLINE  INTERMEDIATE ora_02        Not All Endpoints Re
                    registered, STABLE
ora.LOGS.dg         ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        STABLE
ora.LOGS_CDB3_22.dg ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        STABLE
ora.asm              ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        Started, STABLE
ora.ons              OFFLINE OFFLINE       ora_02        STABLE
-----
Cluster Resources
-----
ora.cdb3.db         1       ONLINE  INTERMEDIATE ora_02        Dismounted, Mount Ini
                    tiated, HOME=/u01/app
                    /oracle/product/19.0
                    .0/cdb3, STABLE
ora.cdb4.db         1       ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        Open, HOME=/u01/app/o
                    racle/product/19.0.0
                    /cdb4, STABLE
ora.cssd            1       ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        STABLE
ora.diskmon         1       OFFLINE OFFLINE       STABLE
ora.driver.afd      1       ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        STABLE
ora.evmd            1       ONLINE  ONLINE       ora_02        STABLE
-----
[oracle@ora_02 bin]$ █

```

- From Monitor tab, open the job to review the details.



12. From DB VM ora\_02, validate the dropped table is recovered after a successful recovery.

```
[oracle@ora_02 bin]$ sqlplus / as sysdba
```

```
SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Fri Oct 6 17:01:28 2023  
Version 19.18.0.0.0
```

```
Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

```
Connected to:
```

Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -  
Production  
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> select name, open\_mode from v\$database;

NAME	OPEN_MODE
CDB3	READ WRITE

SQL> show pdbs

CON_ID	CON_NAME	OPEN MODE	RESTRICTED
2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	CDB3_PDB1	READ WRITE	NO
4	CDB3_PDB2	READ WRITE	NO
5	CDB3_PDB3	READ WRITE	NO

SQL> alter session set container=CDB3\_PDB1;

Session altered.

SQL> select \* from test;

ID
DT
EVENT
1
06-OCT-23 03.18.24.000000 PM
test oracle recovery on guest mounted fsx storage to VMC guest vm
ora_02

SQL> select current\_timestamp from dual;

CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
06-OCT-23 05.02.20.382702 PM -07:00

SQL>



In this example, the same backup sets is used to clone a database on the same VM in a different ORACLE\_HOME. The procedures are equally applicable to clone a database from the backup to separate VM in VMC if needed.

1. Open the database cdb3 backup list. From a data backup of choice, click on Clone button to launch database clone workflow.

The screenshot shows the NetApp SnapCenter interface for an Oracle Database. The main content area displays the backup list for database cdb3. A 'Manage Copies' section shows 19 Backups and 0 Clones. A 'Summary Card' provides a quick overview: 19 Backups, 6 Data Backups, 13 Log Backups, and 0 Clones. The 'Primary Backup(s)' table lists the following backup entries:

Backup Name	Count	Type	IF	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN
ora_02_10-06-2023_17.20.01.9983_1	1	Log		10/06/2023 5:20:23 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2814539
ora_02_10-06-2023_17.05.01.9656_1	1	Log		10/06/2023 5:05:24 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2813819
ora_02_10-06-2023_16.50.01.9670_1	1	Log		10/06/2023 4:50:25 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2812382
ora_02_10-06-2023_16.45.02.2685_1	1	Log		10/06/2023 4:45:45 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2812040
ora_02_10-06-2023_16.45.02.2685_0	1	Data		10/06/2023 4:45:30 PM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	2811991
ora_02_10-06-2023_16.35.01.9959_1	1	Log		10/06/2023 4:35:22 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	2811534

2. Name the clone database SID.

Clone from cdb3

1 Name

2 Locations

3 Credentials

4 PreOps

5 PostOps

6 Notification

7 Summary

Complete Database Clone

Clone SID:

Exclude PDBs:

PDB Clone

Previous Next

3. Select a VM in VMC as the target database host. Identical Oracle version should have been installed and configured on the host.

×
Clone from cdb3

1 Name

2 Locations

3 Credentials

4 PreOps

5 PostOps

6 Notification

7 Summary

### Select the host to create a clone

Clone host

Datafile locations ⓘ

+SC\_2090922\_cdb3tst
Reset

Control files ⓘ

+SC\_2090922\_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/control/control01.ctl
×
↑
+

+SC\_2090922\_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/control/control02.ctl
×
↓
Reset

Redo logs ⓘ

Group	Size	Unit	Number of files			
▶ RedoGroup 1	×	200	MB	2	+	<span>+</span> Reset
▶ RedoGroup 2	×	200	MB	2	+	
▶ RedoGroup 3	×	200	MB	2	+	

Previous Next

4. Select the proper ORACLE\_HOME, user and group on the target host. Keep credential at default.

Clone from cdb3

1 Name

2 Locations

3 **Credentials**

4 PreOps

5 PostOps

6 Notification

7 Summary

**Database Credentials for the clone**

Credential name for sys user: None

ASM instance Credential name: None

Database port: 1521

ASM Port: 1521

**Oracle Home Settings**

Oracle Home: /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb4

Oracle OS User: oracle

Oracle OS Group: oinstall

Previous Next

5. Change clone database parameters to meet configuration or resources requirements for the clone database.



Clone from cdb3
✕

- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Specify scripts to run before clone operation ?

Prescript full path

Arguments

Script timeout  secs

Database Parameter settings

processes	320	✕	▲
remote_login_passwordfile	EXCLUSIVE	✕	+
sga_target	2048M	✕	▼
undo_tablespace	UNDOTBS1	✕	▼

6. Choose recovery scope. `Until Cancel` recovers the clone up to last available log file in the backup set.

Clone from cdb3

1 Name  
2 Locations  
3 Credentials  
4 PreOps  
5 PostOps  
6 Notification  
7 Summary

Recover Database

Until Cancel ⓘ  
 Date and Time  ⓘ  
Date-time format: MM/DD/YYYY hh:mm:ss  
 Until SCN (System Change Number)  ⓘ  
Specify external archive log locations ⓘ ⓘ ⓘ

Create new DBID ⓘ  
 Create tempfile for temporary tablespace ⓘ  
 Enter SQL queries to apply when clone is created  
 Enter scripts to run after clone operation ⓘ

Previous Next

7. Review the summary and launch the clone job.

x
Clone from cdb3

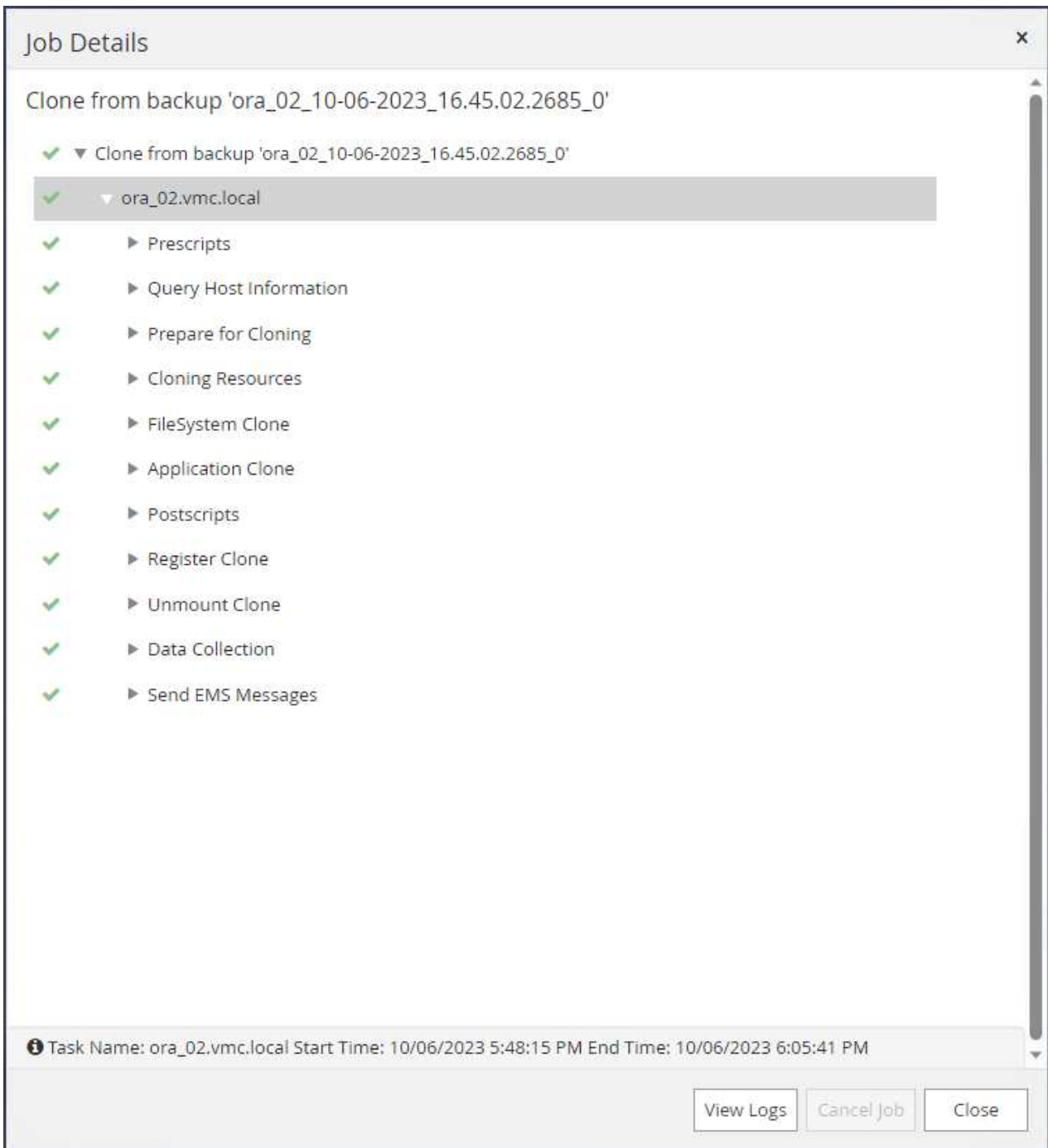
- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Summary

Clone from backup	ora_02_10-06-2023_16.45.02.2685_0
Clone SID	cdb3tst
Clone server	ora_01.vmc.local
Exclude PDBs	none
Oracle home	/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb2
Oracle OS user	oracle
Oracle OS group	oinstall
Datafile mountpaths	+SC_2090922_cdb3tst
Control files	+SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/control/control01.ctl +SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/control/control02.ctl
Redo groups	RedoGroup =1 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/redo01_01.log RedoGroup =1 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/redo01_02.log RedoGroup =2 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/redo02_01.log RedoGroup =2 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/redo02_02.log RedoGroup =3 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/redo03_01.log RedoGroup =3 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_cdb3tst/cdb3tst/redo03_02.log
Recovery scope	Until Cancel
Prescript full path	none
Prescript arguments	
Postscript full path	none
Postscript arguments	
Send email	No

Previous
Finish

8. Monitor the clone job execution from Monitor tab.



9. Cloned database is immediately registered in SnapCenter.

Name	Oracle Database Type	Host/Cluster	Resource Group	Policies	Last Backup	Overall Status
cdb1	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_01.vmc.local				Not protected
cdb2	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_01.vmc.local				Not protected
cdb3	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_02.vmc.local	ora_02_data ora_02_logs	Oracle Archive Logs Backup Oracle Online Full Backup	10/06/2023 6:20:23 PM	Backup succeeded
<b>cdb3st</b>	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_02.vmc.local				Not protected
cdb4	Single Instance (Multitenant)	ora_02.vmc.local	ora_02_data ora_02_logs	Oracle Archive Logs Backup Oracle Online Full Backup	10/06/2023 6:20:23 PM	Backup succeeded

10. From DB VM ora\_02, the cloned database is also registered in Oracle Restart grid control and the dropped test table is recovered in the cloned database cdb3tst as shown below.

```
[oracle@ora_02 ~]$ /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/bin/crsctl
stat res -t
-----
-----
Name          Target  State          Server          State
details
-----
-----
Local Resources
-----
-----
ora.DATA.dg
          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE
ora.LISTENER.lsnr
          ONLINE  INTERMEDIATE   ora_02          Not All
Endpoints Re
gistered, STABLE
ora.LOGS.dg
          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE
ora.SC_2090922_CDB3TST.dg
          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02          STABLE
ora.asm
          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02
Started, STABLE
ora.ons
          OFFLINE OFFLINE          ora_02          STABLE
-----
-----
Cluster Resources
-----
-----
ora.cdb3.db
      1          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02
Open, HOME=/u01/app/o
racle/product/19.0.0
/cdb3, STABLE
ora.cdb3tst.db
      1          ONLINE  ONLINE          ora_02
Open, HOME=/u01/app/o
```

```
oracle/product/19.0.0
```

```
/cdb4,STABLE
```

```
ora.cdb4.db
```

```
1 ONLINE ONLINE ora_02  
Open,HOME=/u01/app/o
```

```
oracle/product/19.0.0
```

```
/cdb4,STABLE
```

```
ora.cssd
```

```
1 ONLINE ONLINE ora_02 STABLE
```

```
ora.diskmon
```

```
1 OFFLINE OFFLINE STABLE
```

```
ora.driver.afd
```

```
1 ONLINE ONLINE ora_02 STABLE
```

```
ora.evmd
```

```
1 ONLINE ONLINE ora_02 STABLE
```

```
-----  
-----
```

```
[oracle@ora_02 ~]$ export
```

```
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/cdb4
```

```
[oracle@ora_02 ~]$ export ORACLE_SID=cdb3tst
```

```
[oracle@ora_02 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba
```

```
SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Sat Oct 7 08:04:51 2023  
Version 19.18.0.0.0
```

```
Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

```
Connected to:
```

```
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
```

```
Production
```

```
Version 19.18.0.0.0
```

```
SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;
```

```
NAME OPEN_MODE
```

```
-----
```

```
CDB3TST READ WRITE
```

```
SQL> show pdbs
```

```
CON_ID CON_NAME
```

```
OPEN MODE RESTRICTED
```

```

2 PDB$SEED                READ ONLY NO
3 CDB3_PDB1                READ WRITE NO
4 CDB3_PDB2                READ WRITE NO
5 CDB3_PDB3                READ WRITE NO
SQL> alter session set container=CDB3_PDB1;

Session altered.

SQL> select * from test;

          ID
-----
DT
-----
EVENT
-----
          1
06-OCT-23 03.18.24.000000 PM
test oracle recovery on guest mounted fsx storage to VMC guest vm
ora_02

```

```
SQL>
```

This completes the demonstration of SnapCenter backup, restore, and clone of Oracle database in VMC SDDC on AWS.

## Where to find additional information

To learn more about the information described in this document, review the following documents and/or websites:

- VMware Cloud on AWS Documentation

<https://docs.vmware.com/en/VMware-Cloud-on-AWS/index.html>

- Installing Oracle Grid Infrastructure for a Standalone Server with a New Database Installation

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-oracle-grid-infrastructure-for-a-standalone-server-with-a-new-database-installation.html#GUID-0B1CEE8C-C893-46AA-8A6A-7B5FAAEC72B3>

- Installing and Configuring Oracle Database Using Response Files

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-and-configuring-oracle->

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

<https://aws.amazon.com/fsx/netapp-ontap/>

## TR-4981: Oracle Active Data Guard Cost Reduction with Amazon FSx ONTAP

Allen Cao, Niyaz Mohamed, NetApp

### Purpose

Oracle Data Guard ensures high availability, data protection, and disaster recovery for enterprise data in a primary database and standby database replication configuration. Oracle Active Data Guard empowers users to access standby databases while data replication is active from the primary database to standby databases. Data Guard is a feature of Oracle Database Enterprise Edition. It does not require separate licensing. On the other hand, Active Data Guard is an Oracle Database Enterprise Edition Option therefore requires separate licensing. Multiple standby databases can receive data replication from a primary database in the Active Data Guard setup. However, each additional standby database requires an Active Data Guard license and extra storage as the size of primary database. The operational costs add up quickly.

If you are keen on cutting back cost of your Oracle database operation and are planning to set up an Active Data Guard in AWS, you should consider an alternative. Instead of Active Data Guard, use Data Guard to replicate from primary database to a single physical standby database on Amazon FSx ONTAP storage. Subsequently, multiple copies of this standby database can be cloned and opened for read/write access to serve many other use cases such as reporting, development, test etc. The net results effectively deliver functionalities of Active Data Guard while eliminating Active Data Guard license and extra storage cost for each additional standby database. In this documentation, we demonstrate how to setup an Oracle Data Guard with your existing primary database in AWS and place physical standby database on Amazon FSx ONTAP storage. The standby database is backed up via snapshot and cloned for read/write access for use cases as desired.

This solution addresses the following use cases:

- Oracle Data Guard between a primary database on any storage in AWS to standby database on Amazon FSx ONTAP storage.
- Clone the standby database while closed for data replication to serve use cases such as reporting, dev, test, etc.

### Audience

This solution is intended for the following people:

- A DBA who set up Oracle Active Data Guard in AWS for high availability, data protection, and disaster recovery.
- A database solution architect interested in Oracle Active Data Guard configuration in the AWS cloud.
- A storage administrator who manages AWS FSx ONTAP storage that supports Oracle Data Guard.
- An application owner who like to stand up Oracle Data Guard in AWS FSx/EC2 environment.

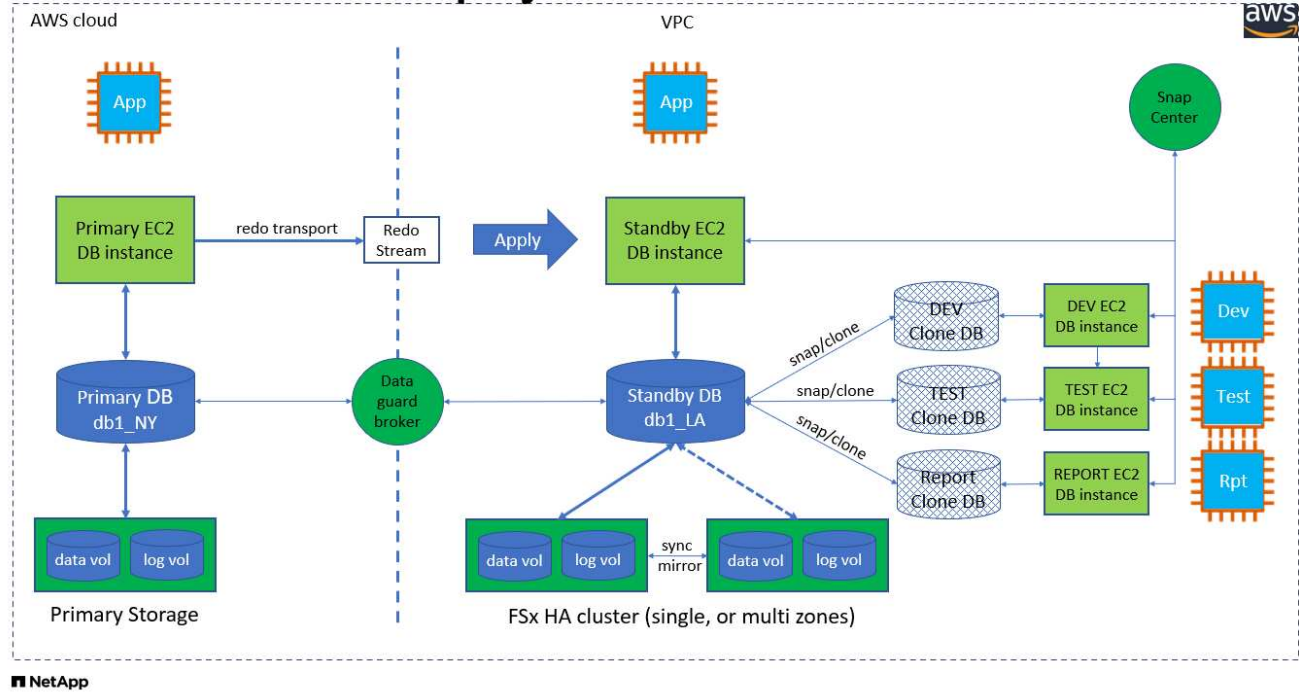


## Solution test and validation environment

The testing and validation of this solution was performed in an AWS FSx ONTAP and EC2 lab environment that might not match the final deployment environment. For more information, see the section [\[Key Factors for Deployment Consideration\]](#).

### Architecture

## Oracle Data Guard Deployment with Amazon FSx for ONTAP



### Hardware and software components

#### Hardware

FSx ONTAP storage	Current version offered by AWS	One FSx HA cluster in the same VPC and availability zone
EC2 instance for compute	t2.xlarge/4vCPU/16G	Three EC2 T2 xlarge EC2 instances, one as primary DB server, one as standby DB server, and the third as a clone DB server

#### Software

RedHat Linux	RHEL-8.6.0_HVM-20220503-x86_64-2-Hourly2-GP2	Deployed RedHat subscription for testing
Oracle Grid Infrastructure	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle Database	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip

Oracle OPatch	Version 12.2.0.1.36	Latest patch p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
---------------	---------------------	--

## Oracle Data Guard configuration with hypothetical NY to LA DR setup

Database	DB_UNIQUE_NAME	Oracle Net Service Name
Primary	db1_NY	db1_NY.demo.netapp.com
Physical Standby	db1_LA	db1_LA.demo.netapp.com

### Key factors for deployment consideration

- How Oracle Standby Database FlexClone Works.** AWS FSx ONTAP FlexClone provides shared copies of the same standby database volumes that are writable. The copies of the volumes are actually pointers that link back to original data blocks until a new write initiates on the clone. ONTAP then allocates new storage blocks for the new writes. Any read IOs are serviced by original data blocks under active replication. Thus, the clone are very storage efficient that can be used for many other use cases with minimal and incremental new storage allocation for new write IOs. This provides tremendous storage cost saving by substantially reducing Active Data Guard storage footprint. NetApp recommends to minimize FlexClone activities in the event of database switching over from primary storage to standby FSx storage in order to maintain Oracle performance at high level.
- Oracle Software Requirements.** In general, a physical standby database must have the same Database Home version as the primary database including Patch Set Exceptions (PSEs), Critical Patch Updates (CPUs), and Patch Set Updates (PSUs), unless an Oracle Data Guard Standby-First Patch Apply process is in progress (as described in My Oracle Support note 1265700.1 at [support.oracle.com](https://support.oracle.com))
- Standby Database Directory Structure Considerations.** If possible, the data files, log files, and control files on the primary and standby systems should have the same names and path names and use Optimal Flexible Architecture (OFA) naming conventions. The archival directories on the standby database should also be identical between sites, including size and structure. This strategy allows other operations such as backups, switchovers, and failovers to execute the same set of steps, reducing the maintenance complexity.
- Force Logging Mode.** To protect against unlogged direct writes in the primary database that cannot be propagated to the standby database, turn on FORCE LOGGING at the primary database before performing data file backups for standby creation.
- Database Storage Management.** For operational simplicity, Oracle recommends that when you set up Oracle Automatic Storage Management (Oracle ASM) and Oracle Managed Files (OMF) in an Oracle Data Guard configuration that you set it up symmetrically on the primary and standby database(s).
- EC2 compute instances.** In these tests and validations, we used an AWS EC2 t2.xlarge instance as the Oracle database compute instance. NetApp recommends using a M5 type EC2 instance as the compute instance for Oracle in production deployment because it is optimized for database workload. You need to size the EC2 instance appropriately for the number of vCPUs and the amount of RAM based on actual workload requirements.
- FSx storage HA clusters single- or multi-zone deployment.** In these tests and validations, we deployed an FSx HA cluster in a single AWS availability zone. For production deployment, NetApp recommends deploying an FSx HA pair in two different availability zones. An FSx cluster is always provisioned in a HA pair that is sync mirrored in a pair of active-passive file systems to provide storage-level redundancy. Multi-zone deployment further enhances high availability in the event of failure in a single AWS zone.
- FSx storage cluster sizing.** An Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage file system provides up to 160,000 raw

SSD IOPS, up to 4GBps throughput, and a maximum of 192TiB capacity. However, you can size the cluster in terms of provisioned IOPS, throughput, and the storage limit (minimum 1,024 GiB) based on your actual requirements at the time of deployment. The capacity can be adjusted dynamically on the fly without affecting application availability.

## Solution deployment

It is assumed that you already have your primary Oracle database deployed in AWS EC2 environment within a VPC as the starting point for setting up Data Guard. The primary database is deployed using Oracle ASM for storage management. Two ASM disk groups - +DATA and +LOGS are created for Oracle data files, log files, and control file etc. For details on Oracle deployment in AWS with ASM, please refer to following technical reports for help.

- [Oracle Database Deployment on EC2 and FSx Best Practices](#)
- [Oracle Database Deployment and Protection in AWS FSx/EC2 with iSCSI/ASM](#)
- [Oracle 19c in Standalone Restart on AWS FSx/EC2 with NFS/ASM](#)

Your primary Oracle database can be running either on an FSx ONTAP or any other storage of choices within the AWS EC2 ecosystem. The following section provides step-by-step deployment procedures for setting up Oracle Data Guard between a primary EC2 DB instance with ASM storage to a standby EC2 DB instance with ASM storage.

## Prerequisites for deployment

Deployment requires the following prerequisites.

1. An AWS account has been set up, and the necessary VPC and network segments have been created within your AWS account.
2. From the AWS EC2 console, you need to deploy minimum three EC2 Linux instances, one as the primary Oracle DB instance, one as standby Oracle DB instance, and an clone target DB instance for reporting, dev, and test etc. See the architecture diagram in the previous section for more details about the environment setup. Also review the AWS [User Guide for Linux instances](#) for more information.
3. From the AWS EC2 console, deploy Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage HA clusters to host Oracle volumes that stores the Oracle standby database. If you are not familiar with the deployment of FSx storage, see the documentation [Creating FSx for ONTAP file systems](#) for step-by-step instructions.
4. Steps 2 and 3 can be performed using the following Terraform automation toolkit, which creates an EC2 instance named `ora_01` and an FSx file system named `fsx_01`. Review the instruction carefully and change the variables to suit your environment before execution. The template can be easily revised for your own deployment requirements.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-
Automation/na_aws_fsx_ec2_deploy.git
```



Ensure that you have allocated at least 50G in EC2 instance root volume in order to have sufficient space to stage Oracle installation files.

**Prepare the primary database for Data Guard**

In this demonstration, we have setup a primary Oracle database called db1 on the primary EC2 DB instance with two ASM disk groups in standalone Restart configuration with data files in ASM disk group +DATA and flash recovery area in ASM disk group +LOGS. Following illustrates the detailed procedures for setting up primary database for Data Guard. All steps should be executed as database owner - oracle user.

1. Primary database db1 configuration on primary EC2 DB instance ip-172-30-15-45. The ASM disk groups can be on any type of storage within EC2 ecosystem.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-45 ~]$ cat /etc/oratab

# This file is used by ORACLE utilities.  It is created by root.sh
# and updated by either Database Configuration Assistant while
creating
# a database or ASM Configuration Assistant while creating ASM
instance.

# A colon, ':', is used as the field terminator.  A new line
terminates
# the entry.  Lines beginning with a pound sign, '#', are comments.
#
# Entries are of the form:
#   $ORACLE_SID:$ORACLE_HOME:<N|Y>:
#
# The first and second fields are the system identifier and home
# directory of the database respectively.  The third field indicates
# to the dbstart utility that the database should , "Y", or should
not,
# "N", be brought up at system boot time.
#
# Multiple entries with the same $ORACLE_SID are not allowed.
#
#
+ASM:/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid:N
db1:/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1:N

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-45 ~]$
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/bin/crsctl stat res -t
-----
-----
Name          Target  State          Server          State
details
-----
-----
Local Resources
-----
```

```

-----
ora.DATA.dg
      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45      STABLE
ora.LISTENER.lsnr
      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45      STABLE
ora.LOGS.dg
      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45      STABLE
ora.asm
      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45
Started, STABLE
ora.ons
      OFFLINE OFFLINE      ip-172-30-15-45      STABLE
-----

```

Cluster Resources

```

-----
ora.cssd
      1      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45      STABLE
ora.dbf1.db
      1      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45
Open, HOME=/u01/app/o
racle/product/19.0.0
/db1, STABLE
ora.diskmon
      1      OFFLINE OFFLINE
ora.driver.afd
      1      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45      STABLE
ora.evmd
      1      ONLINE  ONLINE      ip-172-30-15-45      STABLE
-----

```

2. From sqlplus, enable forced logging on primary.

```
alter database force logging;
```

3. From sqlplus, enable flashback on primary. Flashback allows easy reinstate primary database as a standby after a failover.

```
alter database flashback on;
```

4. Configure redo transport authentication using Oracle password file - create a pwd file on the primary using orapwd utility if not set and copy over to standby database \$ORACLE\_HOME/dbs directory.
5. Create standby redo logs on the primary DB with same size as current online log file. Log groups are one more than online log file groups. The primary database can then quickly transition to the standby role and begin receiving redo data, if necessary.

```
alter database add standby logfile thread 1 size 200M;
```

Validate after standby logs addition:

```
SQL> select group#, type, member from v$logfile;
```

GROUP#	TYPE	MEMBER
3	ONLINE	+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_3.264.1145821513
2	ONLINE	+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_2.263.1145821513
1	ONLINE	+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_1.262.1145821513
4	STANDBY	+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_4.286.1146082751
4	STANDBY	+LOGS/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_4.258.1146082753
5	STANDBY	+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_5.287.1146082819
5	STANDBY	+LOGS/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_5.260.1146082821
6	STANDBY	+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_6.288.1146082825
6	STANDBY	+LOGS/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_6.261.1146082827
7	STANDBY	+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_7.289.1146082835
7	STANDBY	+LOGS/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_7.262.1146082835

11 rows selected.

6. From sqlplus, create a pfile from spfile for editing.

```
create pfile='/home/oracle/initdb1.ora' from spfile;
```

7. Revise the pfile and add following parameters.

```
DB_NAME=db1
DB_UNIQUE_NAME=db1_NY
LOG_ARCHIVE_CONFIG='DG_CONFIG=(db1_NY,db1_LA) '
LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_1='LOCATION=USE_DB_RECOVERY_FILE_DEST
VALID_FOR=(ALL_LOGFILES,ALL_ROLES) DB_UNIQUE_NAME=db1_NY '
LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_2='SERVICE=db1_LA ASYNC
VALID_FOR=(ONLINE_LOGFILES,PRIMARY_ROLE) DB_UNIQUE_NAME=db1_LA '
REMOTE_LOGIN_PASSWORDFILE=EXCLUSIVE
FAL_SERVER=db1_LA
STANDBY_FILE_MANAGEMENT=AUTO
```

8. From sqlplus, create spfile in ASM +DATA directory from revised pfile in /home/oracle directory.

```
create spfile='+DATA' from pfile='/home/oracle/initdb1.ora';
```

9. Locate the newly created spfile under +DATA disk group(using asmcmd utility if necessary). Use srvctl to modify grid to start database from new spfile as shown below.



```

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-45 db1]$ srvctl config database -d db1
Database unique name: db1
Database name: db1
Oracle home: /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
Oracle user: oracle
Spfile: +DATA/DB1/PARAMETERFILE/spfile.270.1145822903
Password file:
Domain: demo.netapp.com
Start options: open
Stop options: immediate
Database role: PRIMARY
Management policy: AUTOMATIC
Disk Groups: DATA
Services:
OSDBA group:
OSOPER group:
Database instance: db1
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-45 db1]$ srvctl modify database -d db1 -spfile
+DATA/DB1/PARAMETERFILE/spfiledb1.ora
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-45 db1]$ srvctl config database -d db1
Database unique name: db1
Database name: db1
Oracle home: /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
Oracle user: oracle
Spfile: +DATA/DB1/PARAMETERFILE/spfiledb1.ora
Password file:
Domain: demo.netapp.com
Start options: open
Stop options: immediate
Database role: PRIMARY
Management policy: AUTOMATIC
Disk Groups: DATA
Services:
OSDBA group:
OSOPER group:
Database instance: db1

```

10. Modify tnsnames.ora to add db\_unique\_name for name resolution.

```
# tnsnames.ora Network Configuration File:
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1/network/admin/tnsnames.ora
# Generated by Oracle configuration tools.

db1_NY =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = ip-172-30-15-
45.ec2.internal) (PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SID = db1)
    )
  )

db1_LA =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = ip-172-30-15-
67.ec2.internal) (PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SID = db1)
    )
  )

LISTENER_DB1 =
  (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = ip-172-30-15-
45.ec2.internal) (PORT = 1521))
```

11. Add data guard service name db1\_NY\_DGMGRL.demo.netapp for primary database to listener.ora file.

```
#Backup file is /u01/app/oracle/crsdata/ip-172-30-15-45/output/listener.ora.bak.ip-172-30-15-45.oracle line added by Agent
# listener.ora Network Configuration File:
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/network/admin/listener.ora
# Generated by Oracle configuration tools.
```

```
LISTENER =
  (DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = ip-172-30-15-45.ec2.internal) (PORT = 1521))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC) (KEY = EXTPROC1521))
    )
  )
```

```
SID_LIST_LISTENER =
  (SID_LIST =
    (SID_DESC =
      (GLOBAL_DBNAME = db1_NY_DGMGRL.demo.netapp.com)
      (ORACLE_HOME = /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1)
      (SID_NAME = db1)
    )
  )
```

```
ENABLE_GLOBAL_DYNAMIC_ENDPOINT_LISTENER=ON # line added by Agent
VALID_NODE_CHECKING_REGISTRATION_LISTENER=ON # line added by Agent
```

1. Shutdown and restart database with srvctl and validate that data guard parameters are now active.

```
srvctl stop database -d db1
```

```
srvctl start database -d db1
```

This completes primary database setup for Data Guard.

## Prepare standby database and activate Data Guard

Oracle Data Guard requires OS kernel configuration and Oracle software stacks including patch sets on standby EC2 DB instance to match with primary EC2 DB instance. For easy management and simplicity, the standby EC2 DB instance database storage configuration ideally should match with the primary EC2 DB instance as well, such as the name, number and size of ASM disk groups. Following are detail procedures for setting up the standby EC2 DB instance for Data Guard. All commands should be executed as oracle owner user id.

1. First, review the configuration of the primary database on primary EC2 instance. In this demonstration, we have setup a primary Oracle database called db1 on the primary EC2 DB instance with two ASM disk groups +DATA and +LOGS in standalone Restart configuration. The primary ASM disk groups may be on any type of storage within EC2 ecosystem.
2. Follow procedures in documentation [TR-4965: Oracle Database Deployment and Protection in AWS FSx/EC2 with iSCSI/ASM](#) to install and configure grid and Oracle on standby EC2 DB instance to match with primary database. The database storage should be provisioned and allocated to standby EC2 DB instance from FSx ONTAP with same storage capacity as primary EC2 DB instance.



Stop at step 10 in Oracle database installation section. The standby database will be instantiated from primary database using dbca database duplication function.

3. Once Oracle software is installed and configured, from standby \$ORACLE\_HOME dbs directory, copy oracle password from primary database.

```
scp
oracle@172.30.15.45:/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1/dbs/orapwdb1
.
```

4. Create tnsnames.ora file with following entries.

```
# tnsnames.ora Network Configuration File:
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1/network/admin/tnsnames.ora
# Generated by Oracle configuration tools.

db1_NY =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = ip-172-30-15-
45.ec2.internal) (PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SID = db1)
    )
  )

db1_LA =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = ip-172-30-15-
67.ec2.internal) (PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SID = db1)
    )
  )
```

5. Add DB data guard service name to listener.ora file.

```

#Backup file is /u01/app/oracle/crsdata/ip-172-30-15-
67/output/listener.ora.bak.ip-172-30-15-67.oracle line added by
Agent
# listener.ora Network Configuration File:
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/network/admin/listener.ora
# Generated by Oracle configuration tools.

LISTENER =
  (DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = ip-172-30-15-
67.ec2.internal) (PORT = 1521))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC) (KEY = EXTPROC1521))
    )
  )

SID_LIST_LISTENER =
  (SID_LIST =
    (SID_DESC =
      (GLOBAL_DBNAME = db1_LA_DGMGRL.demo.netapp.com)
      (ORACLE_HOME = /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1)
      (SID_NAME = db1)
    )
  )

ENABLE_GLOBAL_DYNAMIC_ENDPOINT_LISTENER=ON # line added
by Agent
VALID_NODE_CHECKING_REGISTRATION_LISTENER=ON # line added
by Agent

```

## 6. Set oracle home and path.

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
```

```
export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin
```

## 7. Use dbca to instantiate standby database from primary database db1.

```

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-67 bin]$ dbca -silent -createDuplicateDB
-gdbName db1 -primaryDBConnectionString ip-172-30-15-
45.ec2.internal:1521/db1_NY.demo.netapp.com -sid db1 -initParams
fal_server=db1_NY -createAsStandby -dbUniqueName db1_LA
Enter SYS user password:

Prepare for db operation
22% complete
Listener config step
44% complete
Auxiliary instance creation
67% complete
RMAN duplicate
89% complete
Post duplicate database operations
100% complete

Look at the log file
"/u01/app/oracle/cfgtoollogs/dbca/db1_LA/db1_LA.log" for further
details.

```

8. Validate duplicated standby database. Newly duplicated standby database open in READ ONLY mode initially.

```

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-67 bin]$ export ORACLE_SID=db1
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-67 bin]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed Aug 30 18:25:46
2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;

NAME          OPEN_MODE
-----
DB1           READ ONLY

```

```
SQL> show parameter name
```

NAME	TYPE	VALUE
-----	-----	
-----		
cdb_cluster_name	string	
cell_offloadgroup_name	string	
db_file_name_convert	string	
db_name	string	db1
db_unique_name	string	db1_LA
global_names	boolean	FALSE
instance_name	string	db1
lock_name_space	string	
log_file_name_convert	string	
pdb_file_name_convert	string	
processor_group_name	string	

NAME	TYPE	VALUE
-----	-----	
-----		
service_names	string	
db1_LA.demo.netapp.com		

```
SQL>
```

```
SQL> show parameter log_archive_config
```

NAME	TYPE	VALUE
-----	-----	
-----		
log_archive_config	string	
DG_CONFIG=(db1_NY,db1_LA)		

```
SQL> show parameter fal_server
```

NAME	TYPE	VALUE
-----	-----	
-----		
fal_server	string	db1_NY

```
SQL> select name from v$datafile;
```

NAME
-----
-----
+DATA/DB1_LA/DATAFILE/system.261.1146248215
+DATA/DB1_LA/DATAFILE/sysaux.262.1146248231
+DATA/DB1_LA/DATAFILE/undotbs1.263.1146248247
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5C01A66EE9797E0632D0F1EAC5F59/DATAFILE/system.264.11



```
46248253
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5C01A66EE9797E0632D0F1EAC5F59/DATAFILE/sysaux.265.11
46248261
+DATA/DB1_LA/DATAFILE/users.266.1146248267
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5C01A66EE9797E0632D0F1EAC5F59/DATAFILE/undotbs1.267.
1146248269
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5EFD07C41A1FAE0632D0F1EAC9BD8/DATAFILE/system.268.11
46248271
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5EFD07C41A1FAE0632D0F1EAC9BD8/DATAFILE/sysaux.269.11
46248279
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5EFD07C41A1FAE0632D0F1EAC9BD8/DATAFILE/undotbs1.270.
1146248285
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5EFD07C41A1FAE0632D0F1EAC9BD8/DATAFILE/users.271.114
6248293
```

NAME

```
-----
-----
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F0DDF35CA2B6E0632D0F1EAC8B6B/DATAFILE/system.272.11
46248295
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F0DDF35CA2B6E0632D0F1EAC8B6B/DATAFILE/sysaux.273.11
46248301
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F0DDF35CA2B6E0632D0F1EAC8B6B/DATAFILE/undotbs1.274.
1146248309
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F0DDF35CA2B6E0632D0F1EAC8B6B/DATAFILE/users.275.114
6248315
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F1C9B142A2F1E0632D0F1EACF21A/DATAFILE/system.276.11
46248317
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F1C9B142A2F1E0632D0F1EACF21A/DATAFILE/sysaux.277.11
46248323
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F1C9B142A2F1E0632D0F1EACF21A/DATAFILE/undotbs1.278.
1146248331
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F1C9B142A2F1E0632D0F1EACF21A/DATAFILE/users.279.114
6248337
```

19 rows selected.

```
SQL> select name from v$controlfile;
```

NAME

```
-----
-----
+DATA/DB1_LA/CONTROLFILE/current.260.1146248209
+LOGS/DB1_LA/CONTROLFILE/current.257.1146248209
```

```
SQL> select name from v$tempfile;
```

```
NAME
```

```
-----  
-----  
+DATA/DB1_LA/TEMPFILE/temp.287.1146248371  
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5C01A66EE9797E0632D0F1EAC5F59/TEMPFILE/temp.288.1146  
248375  
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5EFD07C41A1FAE0632D0F1EAC9BD8/TEMPFILE/temp.290.1146  
248463  
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F0DDF35CA2B6E0632D0F1EAC8B6B/TEMPFILE/temp.291.1146  
248463  
+DATA/DB1_LA/03C5F1C9B142A2F1E0632D0F1EACF21A/TEMPFILE/temp.292.1146  
248463
```

```
SQL> select group#, type, member from v$logfile order by 2, 1;
```

```
GROUP# TYPE MEMBER  
-----  
-----  
1 ONLINE +LOGS/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_1.259.1146248349  
1 ONLINE +DATA/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_1.280.1146248347  
2 ONLINE +DATA/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_2.281.1146248351  
2 ONLINE +LOGS/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_2.258.1146248353  
3 ONLINE +DATA/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_3.282.1146248355  
3 ONLINE +LOGS/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_3.260.1146248355  
4 STANDBY +DATA/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_4.283.1146248357  
4 STANDBY +LOGS/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_4.261.1146248359  
5 STANDBY +DATA/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_5.284.1146248361  
5 STANDBY +LOGS/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_5.262.1146248363  
6 STANDBY +LOGS/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_6.263.1146248365  
6 STANDBY +DATA/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_6.285.1146248365  
7 STANDBY +LOGS/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_7.264.1146248369  
7 STANDBY +DATA/DB1_LA/ONLINELOG/group_7.286.1146248367
```

```
14 rows selected.
```

```
SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;
```

```
NAME OPEN_MODE  
-----  
DB1 READ ONLY
```

- Restart standby database in mount stage and execute following command to activate standby database managed recovery.

```
alter database recover managed standby database disconnect from
session;
```

```
SQL> shutdown immediate;
Database closed.
Database dismounted.
ORACLE instance shut down.
SQL> startup mount;
ORACLE instance started.
```

```
Total System Global Area 8053062944 bytes
Fixed Size                  9182496 bytes
Variable Size              1291845632 bytes
Database Buffers           6744440832 bytes
Redo Buffers                7593984 bytes
```

```
Database mounted.
```

```
SQL> alter database recover managed standby database disconnect from
session;
```

```
Database altered.
```

10. Validate the standby database recovery status. Notice the recovery logmerger in APPLYING\_LOG action.

```
SQL> SELECT ROLE, THREAD#, SEQUENCE#, ACTION FROM
V$DATAGUARD_PROCESS;
```

ROLE	THREAD#	SEQUENCE#	ACTION
recovery apply slave	0	0	IDLE
recovery apply slave	0	0	IDLE
recovery apply slave	0	0	IDLE
recovery apply slave	0	0	IDLE
recovery logmerger	1	30	APPLYING_LOG
RFS ping	1	30	IDLE
RFS async	1	30	IDLE
archive redo	0	0	IDLE
archive redo	0	0	IDLE
archive redo	0	0	IDLE
gap manager	0	0	IDLE

ROLE	THREAD#	SEQUENCE#	ACTION
managed recovery	0	0	IDLE
redo transport monitor	0	0	IDLE
log writer	0	0	IDLE
archive local	0	0	IDLE
redo transport timer	0	0	IDLE

```
16 rows selected.
```

```
SQL>
```

This completes the Data Guard protection setup for db1 from primary to standby with managed standby recovery enabled.

## Setup Data Guard Broker

Oracle Data Guard broker is a distributed management framework that automates and centralizes the creation, maintenance, and monitoring of Oracle Data Guard configurations. Following section demonstrate how to setup Data Guard Broker to manage Data Guard environment.

1. Start data guard broker on both primary and standby databases with following command via sqlplus.

```
alter system set dg_broker_start=true scope=both;
```

2. From primary database, connect to Data Guard Borker as SYSDBA.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-45 db1]$ dgmgrl sys@db1_NY
DGMGRL for Linux: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed Aug 30
19:34:14 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights
reserved.

Welcome to DGMGRL, type "help" for information.
Password:
Connected to "db1_NY"
Connected as SYSDBA.
```

3. Create and enable Data Guard Broker configuration.

```
DGMGRL> create configuration dg_config as primary database is db1_NY
connect identifier is db1_NY;
Configuration "dg_config" created with primary database "db1_ny"
DGMGRL> add database db1_LA as connect identifier is db1_LA;
Database "db1_la" added
DGMGRL> enable configuration;
Enabled.
DGMGRL> show configuration;

Configuration - dg_config

Protection Mode: MaxPerformance
Members:
db1_ny - Primary database
db1_la - Physical standby database

Fast-Start Failover: Disabled

Configuration Status:
SUCCESS (status updated 28 seconds ago)
```

4. Validate database status within Data Guard Broker management framework.

```
DGMGRL> show database db1_ny;
```

```
Database - db1_ny
```

```
Role:                PRIMARY
Intended State:      TRANSPORT-ON
Instance(s):        db1
```

```
Database Status:
SUCCESS
```

```
DGMGRL> show database db1_la;
```

```
Database - db1_la
```

```
Role:                PHYSICAL STANDBY
Intended State:      APPLY-ON
Transport Lag:       0 seconds (computed 1 second ago)
Apply Lag:           0 seconds (computed 1 second ago)
Average Apply Rate: 2.00 KByte/s
Real Time Query:    OFF
Instance(s):        db1
```

```
Database Status:
SUCCESS
```

```
DGMGRL>
```

In the event of a failure, Data Guard Broker can be used to failover primary database to standby instantaneously.

### Clone standby database for other use cases

The key benefit of staging standby database on AWS FSx ONTAP in Data Guard is that it can be FlexCloned to serve many other use cases with minimal additional storage investment. In the following section, we demonstrate how to snapshot and clone the mounted and under recovery standby database volumes on FSx ONTAP for other purposes, such as DEV, TEST, REPORT, etc., using the NetApp SnapCenter tool.

Following are high level procedures to clone a READ/WRITE database from the managed physical standby database in Data Guard using SnapCenter. For detail instructions on how to setup and configure SnapCenter, please refer to [Hybrid Cloud Database Solutions with SnapCenter](#) relevant Oracle sections.

1. We begin with creating a test table and inserting a row into the test table on primary database. We will then validate if the transaction traverse down to standby and finally the clone.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-45 db1]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Thu Aug 31 16:35:53
2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> alter session set container=db1_pdb1;

Session altered.

SQL> create table test(
  2 id integer,
  3 dt timestamp,
  4 event varchar(100));

Table created.

SQL> insert into test values(1, sysdate, 'a test transaction on
primary database db1 and ec2 db host: ip-172-30-15-
45.ec2.internal');

1 row created.

SQL> commit;

Commit complete.
```



```
SQL> select * from test;
```

```
          ID
```

```
-----  
DT
```

```
-----  
EVENT
```

```
-----  
          1  
31-AUG-23 04.49.29.000000 PM  
a test transaction on primary database db1 and ec2 db host: ip-172-  
30-15-45.ec2.  
internal
```

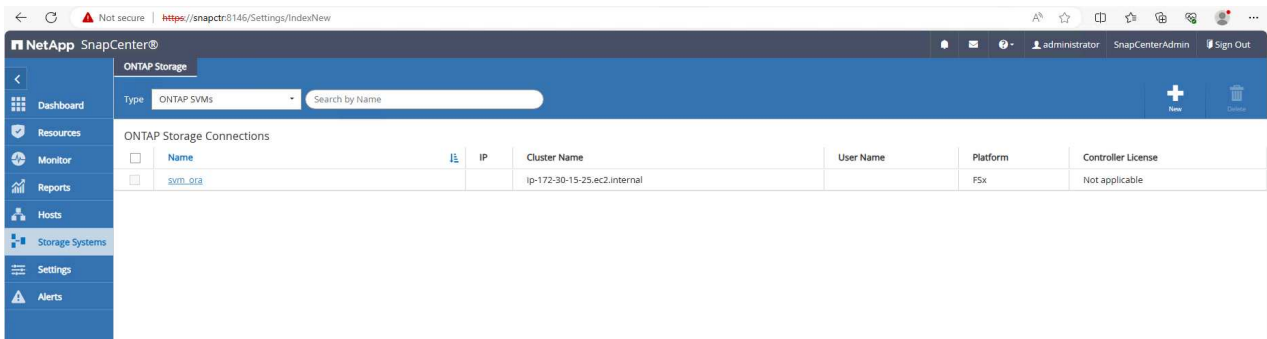
```
SQL> select instance_name, host_name from v$instance;
```

```
INSTANCE_NAME
```

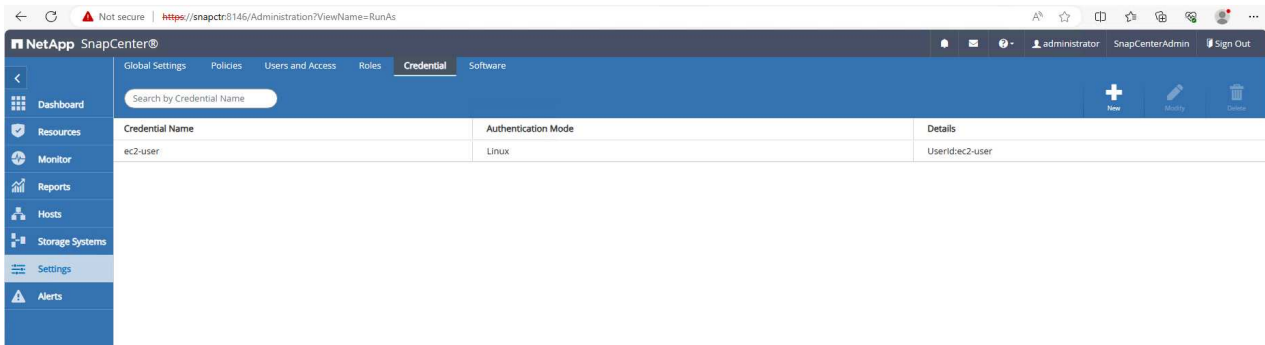
```
-----  
HOST_NAME
```

```
-----  
db1  
ip-172-30-15-45.ec2.internal
```

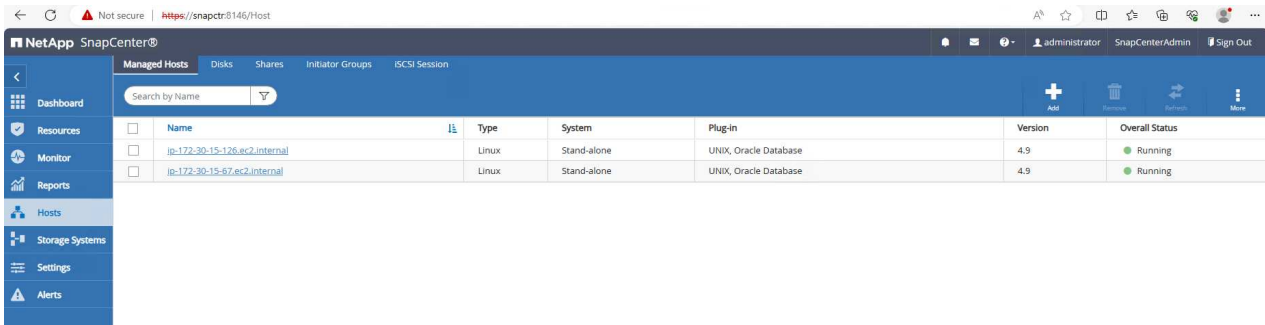
2. Add FSx storage cluster to Storage Systems in SnapCenter with FSx cluster management IP and fsxadmin credential.



3. Add AWS ec2-user to Credential in Settings.

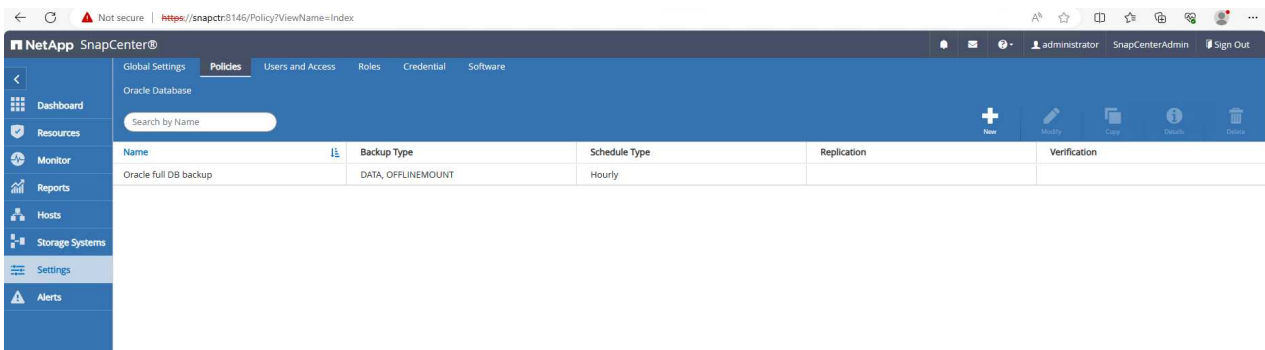


4. Add standby EC2 DB instance and clone EC2 DB instance to Hosts.

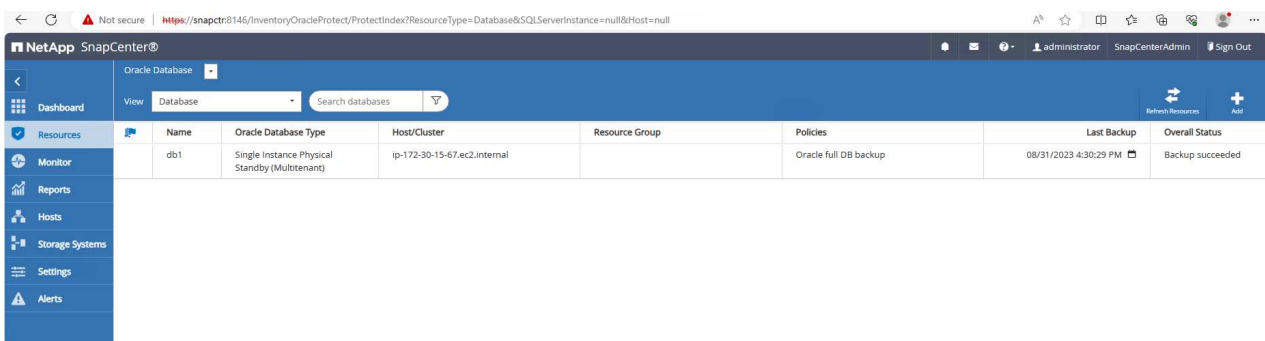


The clone EC2 DB instance should have similar Oracle software stacks installed and configured. In our test case, the grid infrastructure and Oracle 19C installed and configured but no database created.

5. Create a backup policy that is tailored for offline/mount full database backup.

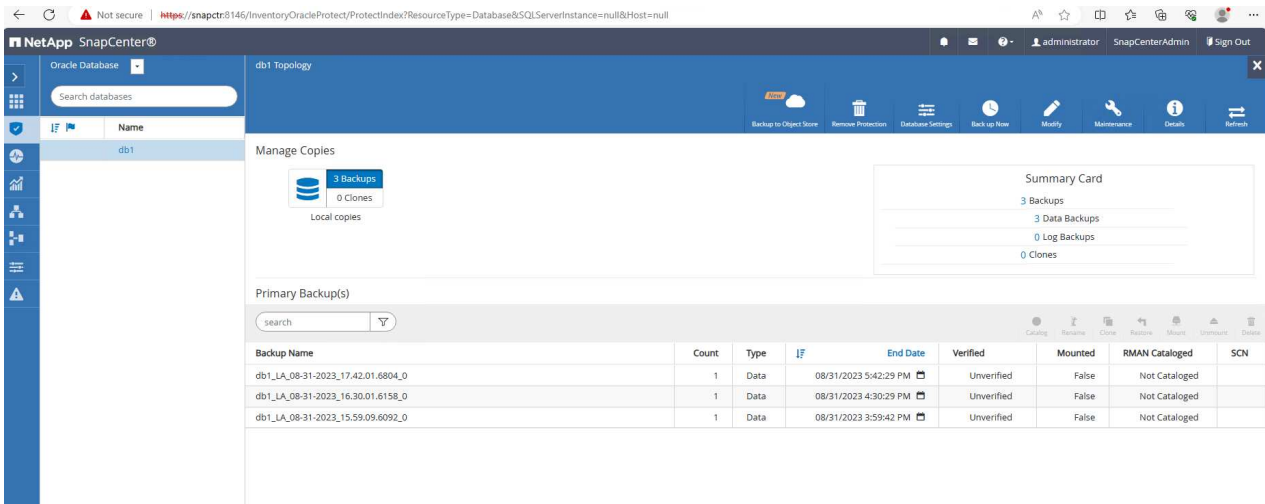


6. Apply backup policy to protect standby database in Resources tab.

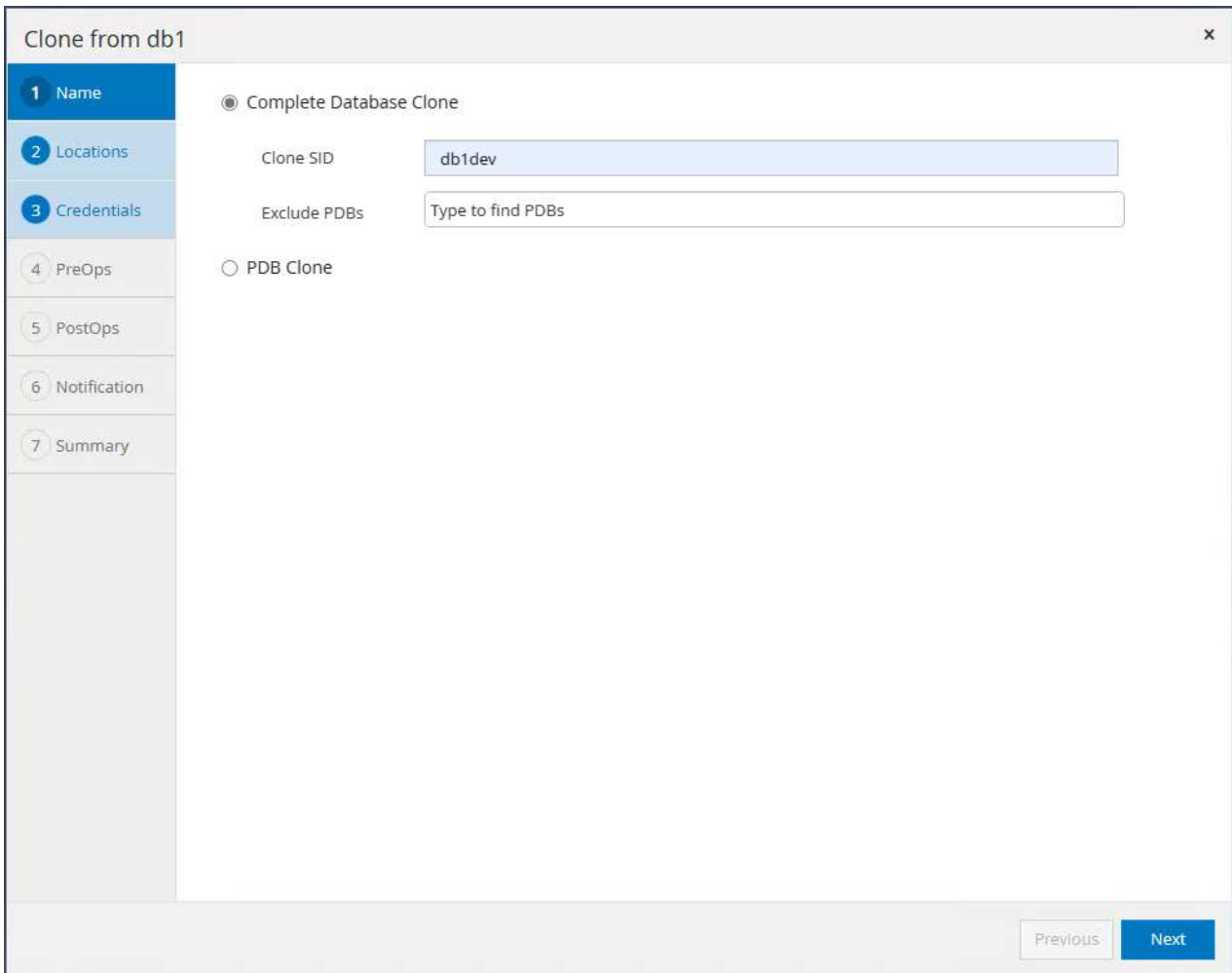


7. Click on database name to open the database backups page. Select a backup to be used for

database clone and click on Clone button to launch clone workflow.



8. Select Complete Database Clone and name the clone instance SID.



9. Select the clone host, which hosts the cloned database from standby DB. Accept the default for data files, control files, and redo logs. Two ASM disk groups will be created on the clone host that are corresponding to the disk groups on standby database.

x
Clone from db1

- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Select the host to create a clone

Clone host

Datafile locations ?

+SC\_2090922\_db1dev  
+SC\_2342319\_db1dev

Control files ?

+SC\_2090922\_db1dev/db1dev/control/control01.ctl  
+SC\_2090922\_db1dev/db1dev/control/control02.ctl

Redo logs ?

Group	Size	Unit	Number of files			
▶ RedoGroup 1	×	200	MB	2	+	<input type="button" value="Reset"/>
▶ RedoGroup 2	×	200	MB	2	+	
▶ RedoGroup 3	×	200	MB	2	+	

10. No database credentials are needed for OS based authentication. Match Oracle home setting with what is configured on the clone EC2 database instance.

x
Clone from db1

- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Database Credentials for the clone

Credential name for sys user  + ⓘ

ASM instance Credential name  + ⓘ

Database port

ASM Port

### Oracle Home Settings ⓘ

Oracle Home

Oracle OS User

Oracle OS Group

11. Change clone database parameters if needed and specify scripts to run before cloen if any.

Clone from db1
✕

- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Specify scripts to run before clone operation ?

Prescript full path

Arguments

Script timeout  secs

Database Parameter settings

audit_file_dest	/u01/app/oracle/admin/db1dev_LA/adump	✕
audit_trail	DB	✕
open_cursors	300	✕
pga_aggregate_target	2684354560	✕

12. Enter SQL to run after clone. In the demo, we executed commands to turn off database archive mode for a dev/test/report database.

### Clone from db1 ✕

- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps**
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

Until Cancel recovery will be performed for Physical Standby Dataguard/Active Dataguard database.

Create new DBID ?

Create tempfile for temporary tablespace ?

Enter SQL queries to apply when clone is created

shutdown immediate ; startup mount ; alter database noarchivelog ; alter database open ; + Reset

Enter scripts to run after clone operation ?

Previous Next

13. Configure email notification if desired.

Clone from db1 ×

**1** Name

**2** Locations

**3** Credentials

**4** PreOps

**5** PostOps

**6** Notification

**7** Summary

**Provide email settings** ⓘ

Email preference

From

To

Subject

Attach job report

14. Review the summary, click `Finish` to start the clone.



x
Clone from db1

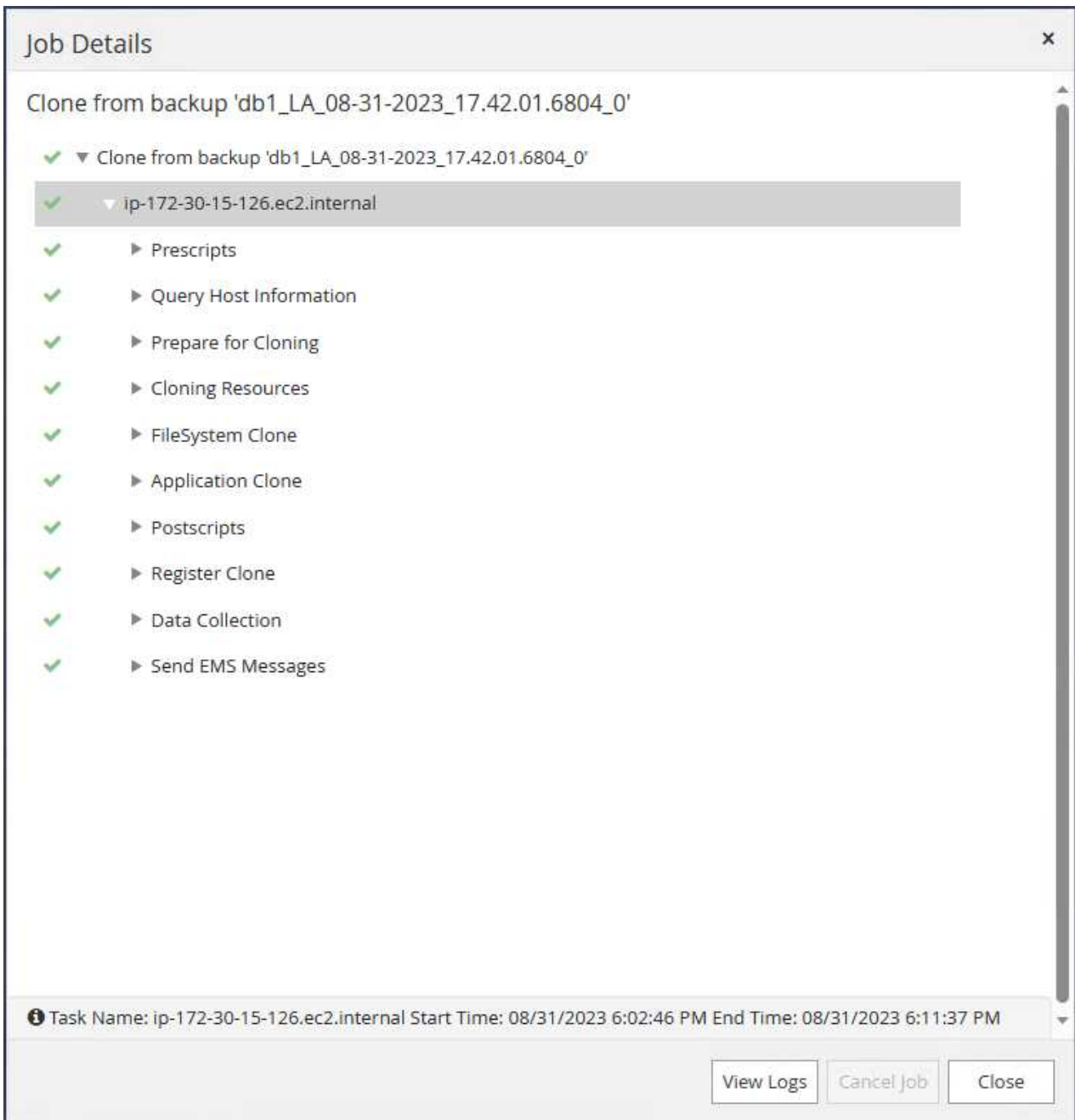
- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Summary

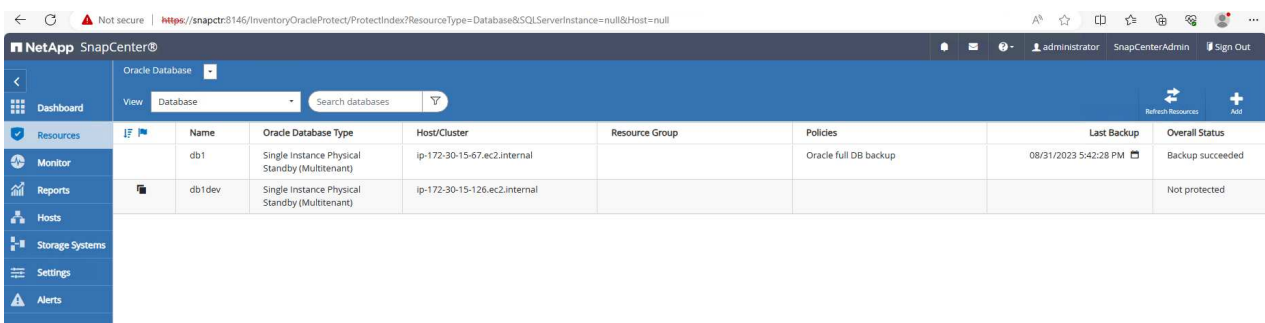
Clone from backup	db1_LA_08-31-2023_17.42.01.6804_0
Clone SID	db1 dev
Clone server	ip-172-30-15-126.ec2.internal
Exclude PDBs	none
Oracle home	/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/dev
Oracle OS user	oracle
Oracle OS group	oinstall
Datafile mountpaths	+SC_2090922_db1 dev +SC_2342319_db1 dev
Control files	+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/control/control01.ctl +SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/control/control02.ctl
Redo groups	RedoGroup =1 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo01_01.log RedoGroup =1 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo01_02.log RedoGroup =2 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo02_01.log RedoGroup =2 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo02_02.log RedoGroup =3 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo03_01.log RedoGroup =3 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo03_02.log RedoGroup =4 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo04_01.log RedoGroup =4 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo04_02.log RedoGroup =5 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo05_01.log RedoGroup =5 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo05_02.log RedoGroup =6 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo06_01.log RedoGroup =6 TotalSize =200 Path =+SC_2090922_db1 dev/db1 dev/redolog/redo06_02.log

Previous
Finish

15. Monitor clone job in Monitor tab. We observed that it took around 8 minutes to clone a database about 300GB in database volume size.



16. Validate the clone database from SnapCenter, which is immediately registered in Resources tab right after clone operation.



17. Query the clone database from clone EC2 instance. We validated that test transaction that occurred in primary database had traversed down to clone database.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-126 ~]$ export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/dev
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-126 ~]$ export ORACLE_SID=db1dev
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-126 ~]$ export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-126 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed Sep 6 16:41:41 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

```
Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0
```

```
SQL> select name, open_mode, log_mode from v$database;
```

NAME	OPEN_MODE	LOG_MODE
DB1DEV	READ WRITE	NOARCHIVELOG

```
SQL> select instance_name, host_name from v$instance;
```

INSTANCE_NAME	HOST_NAME
db1dev	ip-172-30-15-126.ec2.internal

```
SQL> alter session set container=db1_pdb1;
```

```
Session altered.
```

```
SQL> select * from test;
```

ID	DT	EVENT
----	----	-------

```
1
31-AUG-23 04.49.29.000000 PM
a test transaction on primary database db1 and ec2 db host: ip-172-
30-15-45.ec2.
internal

SQL>
```

This completes the clone and validation of a new Oracle database from standby database in Data Guard on FSx storage for DEV, TEST, REPORT or any other use cases. Multiple Oracle databases can be cloned off the same standby database in Data Guard.

## Where to find additional information

To learn more about the information described in this document, review the following documents and/or websites:

- Data Guard Concepts and Administration

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/sbydb/index.html#Oracle%C2%AE-Data-Guard>

- WP-7357: Oracle Database Deployment on EC2 and FSx Best Practices

[https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/netapp-solutions/databases/aws\\_ora\\_fsx\\_ec2\\_deploy\\_intro.html](https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/netapp-solutions/databases/aws_ora_fsx_ec2_deploy_intro.html)

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

<https://aws.amazon.com/fsx/netapp-ontap/>

- Amazon EC2

[https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc\\_channel=ps&s\\_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef\\_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw\\_wcB:G:s&s\\_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2](https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc_channel=ps&s_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw_wcB:G:s&s_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2)

## TR-4973: Quick Recovery and Clone of Oracle VLDB with Incremental Merge on AWS FSx ONTAP

Allen Cao, Niyaz Mohamed, NetApp

### Purpose

Recovering a Very Large Database (VLDB) in Oracle using the Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN) backup tool can be a highly challenging task. The database restoration process from backup media in the event of a failure can be time-consuming, delaying the database recovery and potentially impacting your Service Level Agreement (SLA) significantly. However, starting from version 10g, Oracle introduced a RMAN feature that

allows users to create staged image copies of the Oracle database data files on additional disk storage located on the DB server host. These image copies can be incrementally updated using RMAN on a daily basis. In the case of a failure, the Database Administrator (DBA) can swiftly switch the Oracle database from the failed media to the image copy, eliminating the need for a complete database media restore. The result is a greatly improved SLA, albeit at the cost of doubling the required database storage.

If you are keen on SLA for your VLDB and contemplating moving the Oracle database to a public cloud such as AWS, you could set up a similar database protection structure using resources such as AWS FSx ONTAP for staging your standby database image copy. In this documentation, we demonstrate how to provision and export an NFS file system from AWS FSx ONTAP to be mounted on an Oracle database server for staging a standby database copy for quick recovery in the event of a primary storage failure.

Better yet, we also show how you could leverage NetApp FlexClone to create a copy of the same staging NFS file system for other use cases such as standing up a dev/test Oracle environment with this same standby database image copy without additional storage investment.

This solution addresses the following use cases:

- An Oracle VLDB image copy incremental merge via RMAN on NFS mount point off AWS FSx ONTAP storage.
- Quick recovery of an Oracle VLDB by switching to database image copy on FSx ONTAP storage in the event of failure.
- Clone FSx ONTAP NFS file system volume storing an Oracle VLDB image copy to be used for standing up another database instance for other use cases.

## Audience

This solution is intended for the following people:

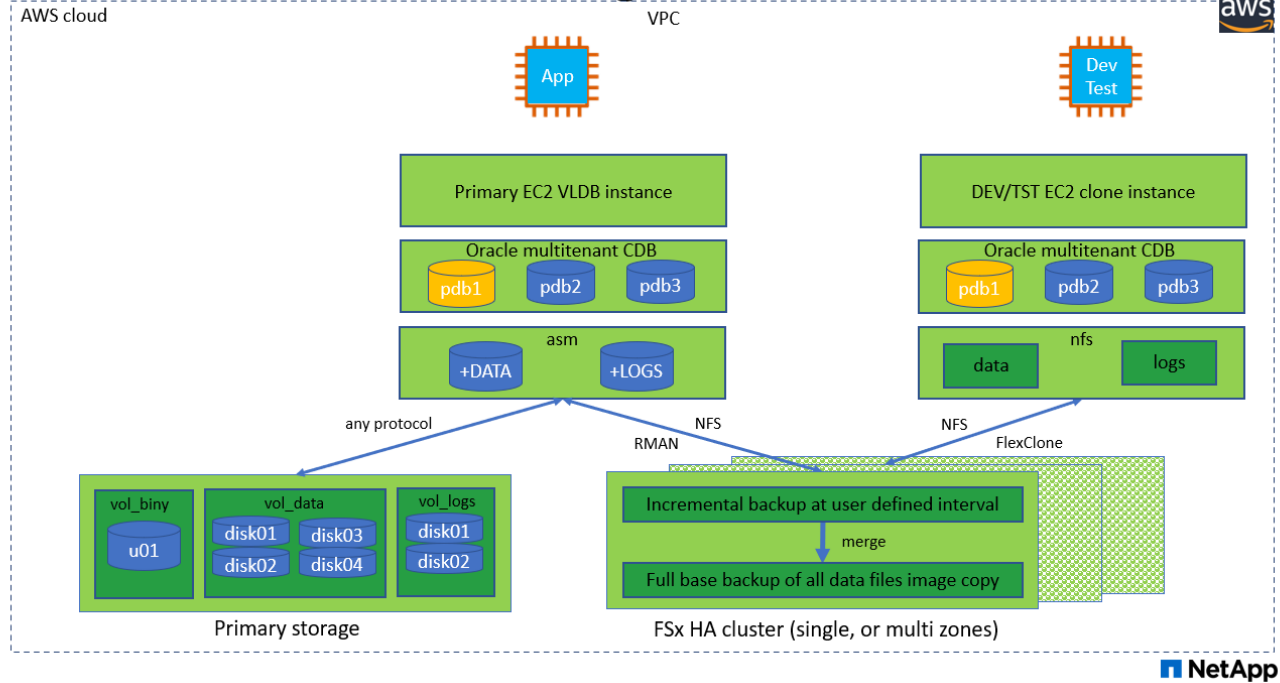
- A DBA who set up Oracle VLDB image copy incremental merge via RMAN in AWS for faster database recovery.
- A database solution architect who tests Oracle workloads in the AWS public cloud.
- A storage administrator who manages Oracle databases deployed to AWS FSx ONTAP storage.
- An application owner who would like to stand up Oracle databases in AWS FSx/EC2 environment.

## Solution test and validation environment

The testing and validation of this solution was performed in an AWS FSx ONTAP and EC2 environment that might not match the final deployment environment. For more information, see the section [\[Key Factors for Deployment Consideration\]](#).

## Architecture

# Oracle VLDB Incremental Merge via RMAN on AWS FSxN



## Hardware and software components

### Hardware

FSx ONTAP storage	Current version offered by AWS	One FSx HA cluster in the same VPC and availability zone
EC2 instance for compute	t2.xlarge/4vCPU/16G	Two EC2 T2 xlarge EC2 instances, one as primary DB server and the other as a clone DB server

### Software

RedHat Linux	RHEL-8.6.0_HVM-20220503-x86_64-2-Hourly2-GP2	Deployed RedHat subscription for testing
Oracle Grid Infrastructure	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle Database	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle OPatch	Version 12.2.0.1.36	Latest patch p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip

## Key factors for deployment consideration

- **Oracle VLDB storage layout for RMAN incremental merge.** In our tests and validations, the NFS volume for Oracle incremental backup and merge is allocated from a single FSx file system, which has 4GBps throughput, 160,000 raw SSD IOPS, and 192TiB capacity limit. For deployment over the thresholds,

multiple FSx file systems can be concatenated in parallel with multiple NFS mount points to provide higher capacity.

- **Oracle recoverability using RMAN incremental merge.** The RMAN incremental backup and merge is generally executed at user defined frequency based on your RTO and RPO objectives. If there are total loss of primary data storage and/or archived logs, the data loss can occur. The Oracle database can be recovered up to last incremental backup that is available from FSx database backup image copy. To minimize the data loss, Oracle flash recovery area can be setup on FSx NFS mount point and archived logs are backed up to FSx NFS mount along with database image copy.
- **Running Oracle VLDB off FSx NFS file system.** Unlike other bulk storage for database backup, AWS FSx ONTAP is a cloud enabled production grade storage that delivers high level of performance and storage efficiency. Once Oracle VLDB switches over from primary storage to image copy on FSx ONTAP NFS file system, database performance can be maintained at high level while the primary storage failure is addressed. You can take comfort to know that user application experience does not suffer as the result of primary storage failure.
- **FlexClone Oracle VLDB image copy of NFS volume for other use cases.** AWS FSx ONTAP FlexClone provides shared copies of the same NFS data volume that are writable. Thus, they can be used for many other use cases while still maintaining the integrity of staging Oracle VLDB image copy even when Oracle database is switched over. This provides tremendous storage cost saving by substantially reducing VLDB storage footprint. NetApp recommends to minimize FlexClone activities in the event of database switching over from primary storage to database image copy in order to maintain Oracle performance at high level.
- **EC2 compute instances.** In these tests and validations, we used an AWS EC2 t2.xlarge instance as the Oracle database compute instance. NetApp recommends using an M5 type EC2 instance as the compute instance for Oracle in production deployment because it is optimized for database workload. You need to size the EC2 instance appropriately for the number of vCPUs and the amount of RAM based on actual workload requirements.
- **FSx storage HA clusters single- or multi-zone deployment.** In these tests and validations, we deployed an FSx HA cluster in a single AWS availability zone. For production deployment, NetApp recommends deploying an FSx HA pair in two different availability zones. An FSx HA cluster is always provisioned in a HA pair that is sync mirrored in a pair of active-passive file systems to provide storage-level redundancy. Multi-zone deployment further enhances high availability in the event of failure in a single AWS zone.
- **FSx storage cluster sizing.** An Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage file system provides up to 160,000 raw SSD IOPS, up to 4GBps throughput, and a maximum of 192TiB capacity. However, you can size the cluster in terms of provisioned IOPS, throughput, and the storage limit (minimum 1,024 GiB) based on your actual requirements at the time of deployment. The capacity can be adjusted dynamically on the fly without affecting application availability.
- **dNFS configuration.** dNFS is built into Oracle kernel and is known to dramatically increase Oracle database performance when Oracle is deployed to NFS storage. dNFS is packaged into Oracle binary but is not turned on by default. It should be turned on for any Oracle database deployment on NFS. For multiple FSx file systems deployment for a VLDB, dNFS multi-path to different FSx NFS file systems should be properly configured.

## Solution deployment

It is assumed that you already have your Oracle VLDB deployed in AWS EC2 environment within a VPC. If you need help on Oracle deployment in AWS, please refer to following technical reports for help.

- [Oracle Database Deployment on EC2 and FSx Best Practices](#)
- [Oracle Database Deployment and Protection in AWS FSx/EC2 with iSCSI/ASM](#)
- [Oracle 19c in Standalone Restart on AWS FSx/EC2 with NFS/ASM](#)

Your Oracle VLDB can be running either on a FSx ONTAP or any other storage of choices within the AWS EC2 ecosystem. The following section provides step-by-step deployment procedures for setting up RMAN incremental merge to an image copy of an Oracle VLDB that is staging in an NFS mount off AWS FSx ONTAP storage.

## Prerequisites for deployment

Deployment requires the following prerequisites.

1. An AWS account has been set up, and the necessary VPC and network segments have been created within your AWS account.
2. From the AWS EC2 console, you must deploy two EC2 Linux instances, one as the primary Oracle DB server and an optional alternative clone target DB server. See the architecture diagram in the previous section for more details about the environment setup. Also review the [User Guide for Linux instances](#) for more information.
3. From the AWS EC2 console, deploy Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage HA clusters to host the NFS volumes that stores the Oracle database standby image copy. If you are not familiar with the deployment of FSx storage, see the documentation [Creating FSx for ONTAP file systems](#) for step-by-step instructions.
4. Steps 2 and 3 can be performed using the following Terraform automation toolkit, which creates an EC2 instance named `ora_01` and an FSx file system named `fsx_01`. Review the instruction carefully and change the variables to suit your environment before execution. The template can be easily revised for your own deployment requirements.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-
Automation/na_aws_fsx_ec2_deploy.git
```



Ensure that you have allocated at least 50G in EC2 instance root volume in order to have sufficient space to stage Oracle installation files.

## Provision and export NFS volume to be mounted to EC2 DB instance host



In this demonstration, we will show how to provision an NFS volume from the command line by login to an FSx cluster via ssh as fsxadmin user through FSx cluster management IP. Alternatively, the volume can be allocated using the AWS FSx console as well. Repeat the procedures on other FSx file systems if more than one FSx file system are set up to accommodate the size of the database.

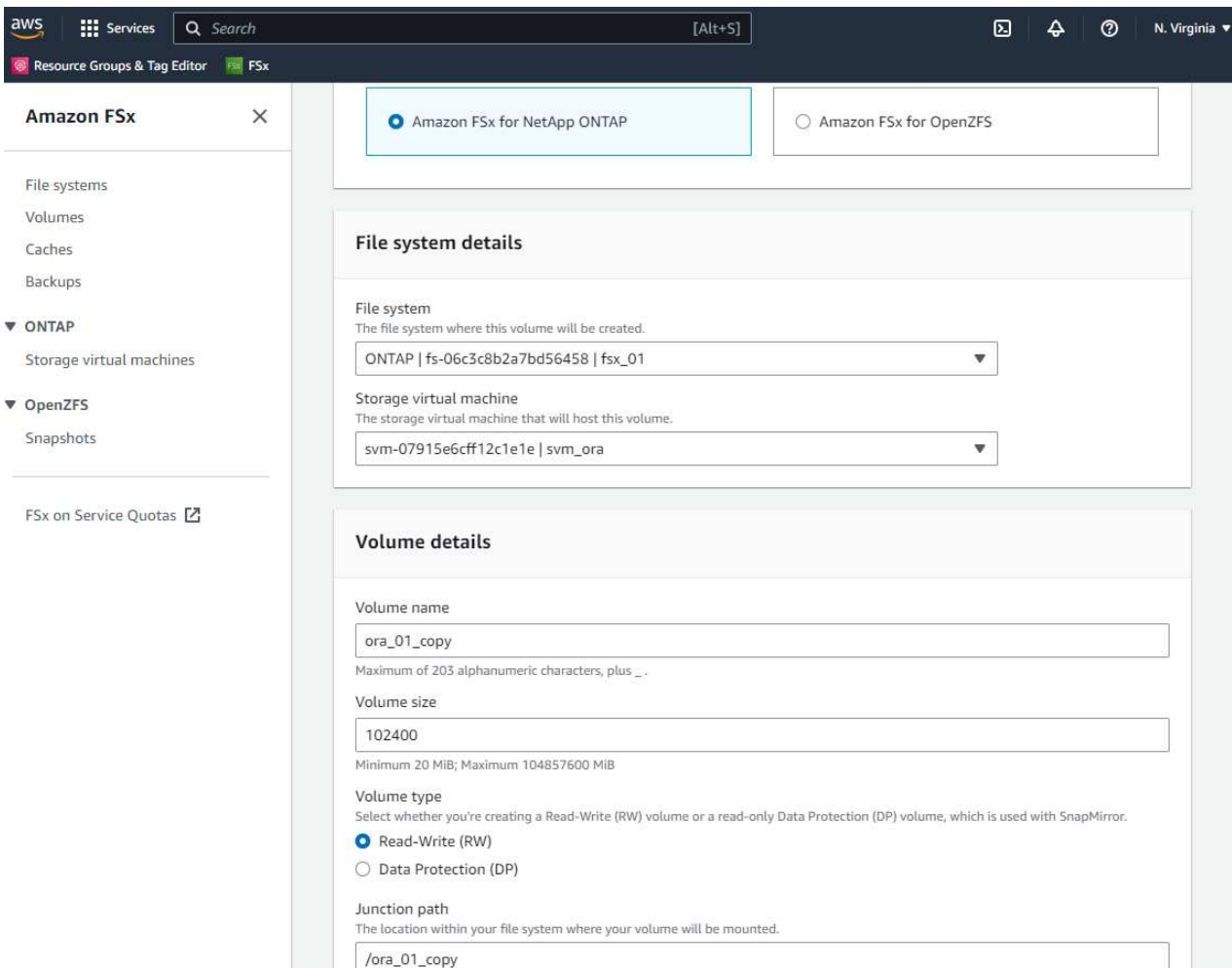
1. First, provision NFS volume via CLI by logging to the FSx cluster through SSH as the fsxadmin user. Change to your FSx cluster management IP address, which can be retrieved from AWS FSx ONTAP UI console.

```
ssh fsxadmin@172.30.15.53
```

2. Create NFS volume the same size as your primary storage for storing primary Oracle VLDB database data files image copy.

```
vol create -volume ora_01_copy -aggregate aggr1 -size 100G -state  
online -type RW -junction-path /ora_01_copy -snapshot-policy none  
-tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

3. Alternatively, the volume can be provisioned from AWS FSx console UI with options: storage efficiency Enabled, security style Unix , Snapshot policy None, and Storage tiering Snapshot Only as show below.



4. Create a customized snapshot policy for oracle database with a daily schedule and 30 days retention. You should adjust the policy to fit your specific needs in terms of snapshot frequency and retention window.

```
snapshot policy create -policy oracle -enabled true -schedule1 daily
-count1 30
```

Apply policy to provisioned NFS volume for RMAN incremental backup and merge.

```
vol modify -volume ora_01_copy -snapshot-policy oracle
```

5. Login to EC2 instance as ec2-user and create a directory /nfsfsxn. Create additional mount point directories for additional FSx file systems.

```
sudo mkdir /nfsfsxn
```

6. Mount the FSx ONTAP NFS volume to EC2 DB instance host. Change to your FSx virtual server NFS lif address. The NFS lif address can be retrieved from FSx ONTAP UI console.

```
sudo mount 172.30.15.19:/ora_01_copy /nfsfsxn -o  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsize=262144,wsiz=262144,noi  
tr
```

7. Change mount point ownership to oracle:oinstall, change to your oracle user name and primary group as necessary.

```
sudo chown oracle:oinstall /nfsfsxn
```

## Setup Oracle RMAN incremental merge to image copy on FSx

RMAN incremental merge update the staging database data files image copy continuously at every incremental backup/merge interval. The image copy of database backup will be as up to date as the frequency you execute the incremental backup/merge. So, take into consideration of database performance, your RTO and RPO objectives when deciding the frequency of RMAN incremental backup and merge.

1. Login to primary DB server EC2 instance as oracle user
2. Create an oracopy directory under mount point /nfsfsxn to store oracle data files image copies and archlog directory for Oracle flash recovery area.

```
mkdir /nfsfsxn/oracopy
```

```
mkdir /nfsfsxn/archlog
```

3. Login to Oracle database via sqlplus, enable block change tracking for faster incremental backup and change Oracle flash recovery area to FSxN mount if it is currently on primary storage. This allows the RMAN default control file/spfile autobackup and archived logs to be backed up to FSxN NFS mount for recovery.

```
sqlplus / as sysdba
```

From sqlplus prompt, execute following command.

```
alter database enable block change tracking using file  
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/bct_db1.ctf'
```

```
alter system set db_recovery_file_dest='/nfsfsxn/archlog/'  
scope=both;
```

4. Create a RMAN backup and incremental merge script. The script allocates multiple channels for parallel RMAN backup and merge. First execution would generate the initial full baseline image copy. In a complete run, it first purges obsolete backups that are outside of retention window to keep staging area clean. It then switches current log file before merge and backup. The incremental backup follows the merge so that the database image copy is trailing current database state by one backup/merge cycle. The merge and backup order can be reversed for quicker recovery at user's preference. The RMAN script can be integrated into a simple shell script to be executed from crontab on the primary DB server. Ensure control file autobackup is on in RMAN setting.

```
vi /home/oracle/rman_bkup_merge.cmd
```

Add following lines:

```
RUN
```

```
{  
  allocate channel c1 device type disk format '/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';  
  allocate channel c2 device type disk format '/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';  
  allocate channel c3 device type disk format '/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';  
  allocate channel c4 device type disk format '/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';  
  delete obsolete;  
  sql 'alter system archive log current';  
  recover copy of database with tag 'OraCopyBKUPonFSxN_level_0';  
  backup incremental level 1 copies=1 for recover of copy with tag  
'OraCopyBKUPonFSxN_level_0' database;  
}
```

5. At EC2 DB server, login to RMAN locally as oracle user with or without RMAN catalog. In this demonstration, we are not connecting to a RMAN catalog.

```
rman target / nocatalog;
```

output:

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-99 ~]$ rman target / nocatalog;
```

```
Recovery Manager: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed May 24  
17:44:49 2023  
Version 19.18.0.0.0
```

```
Copyright (c) 1982, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights  
reserved.
```

```
connected to target database: DB1 (DBID=1730530050)  
using target database control file instead of recovery catalog
```

```
RMAN>
```

6. From RMAN prompt, execute the script. First execution creates a baseline database image copy and subsequent executions merge and update the baseline image copy incrementally. The following is how to execute the script and the typical output. Set the number of channels to match the CPU cores on the host.

```
RMAN> @/home/oracle/rman_bkup_merge.cmd
```

```

RMAN> RUN
2> {
3>  allocate channel c1 device type disk format
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';
4>  allocate channel c2 device type disk format
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';
5>  allocate channel c3 device type disk format
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';
6>  allocate channel c4 device type disk format
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/%U';
7>  delete obsolete;
8>  sql 'alter system archive log current';
9>  recover copy of database with tag 'OraCopyBKUPonFSxN_level_0';
10> backup incremental level 1 copies=1 for recover of copy with
tag 'OraCopyBKUPonFSxN_level_0' database;
11> }

allocated channel: c1
channel c1: SID=411 device type=DISK

allocated channel: c2
channel c2: SID=146 device type=DISK

allocated channel: c3
channel c3: SID=402 device type=DISK

allocated channel: c4
channel c4: SID=37 device type=DISK

Starting recover at 17-MAY-23
no copy of datafile 1 found to recover
no copy of datafile 3 found to recover
no copy of datafile 4 found to recover
no copy of datafile 5 found to recover
no copy of datafile 6 found to recover
no copy of datafile 7 found to recover
.
.
Finished recover at 17-MAY-23

Starting backup at 17-MAY-23
channel c1: starting incremental level 1 datafile backup set
channel c1: specifying datafile(s) in backup set
input datafile file number=00022
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.287.113
7018311

```

```
input datafile file number=00026
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.291.113
7018481
input datafile file number=00030
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.295.113
7018787
input datafile file number=00011
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/undotbs1.27
1.1136668041
input datafile file number=00035
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.300.113
7019181
channel c1: starting piece 1 at 17-MAY-23
channel c2: starting incremental level 1 datafile backup set
channel c2: specifying datafile(s) in backup set
input datafile file number=00023
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.288.113
7018359
input datafile file number=00027
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.292.113
7018523
input datafile file number=00031
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.296.113
7018837
input datafile file number=00009
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/system.272.
1136668041
input datafile file number=00034
name=+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.299.113
7019117
.
.
Finished backup at 17-MAY-23

Starting Control File and SPFILE Autobackup at 17-MAY-23
piece
handle=+LOGS/DB1/AUTOBACKUP/2023_05_17/s_1137095435.367.1137095435
comment=NONE
Finished Control File and SPFILE Autobackup at 17-MAY-23
released channel: c1
released channel: c2
released channel: c3
released channel: c4

RMAN> **end-of-file**
```





Container ID: 2, PDB Name: PDB\$SEED

```
28      9      A 17-MAY-23      3009871      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-9_0q1sd7cm
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

22      10     A 17-MAY-23      3009849      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSAUX_FNO-10_0k1sd7bb
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

25      11     A 17-MAY-23      3009862      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-11_0n1sd7c1
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

35      12     A 17-MAY-23      3009909      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
12_111sd7dm
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

29      13     A 17-MAY-23      3009876      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-13_0r1sd7ct
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

23      14     A 17-MAY-23      3009854      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSAUX_FNO-14_0l1sd7bi
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

31      15     A 17-MAY-23      3009900      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-15_0t1sd7db
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

36      16     A 17-MAY-23      3009911      17-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
```

```

16_121sd7dn
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

30      17      A 17-MAY-23      3009895      17-MAY-23      NO
    Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-17_0s1sd7d4
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

24      18      A 17-MAY-23      3009858      17-MAY-23      NO
    Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSAUX_FNO-18_0m1sd7bq
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

32      19      A 17-MAY-23      3009903      17-MAY-23      NO
    Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_0u1sd7de
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

37      20      A 17-MAY-23      3009914      17-MAY-23      NO
    Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
20_131sd7do
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

4       21      A 17-MAY-23      3009019      17-MAY-23      NO
    Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
21_021sd6pv
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

5       22      A 17-MAY-23      3009419      17-MAY-23      NO
    Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
22_031sd6r2
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

6       23      A 17-MAY-23      3009460      17-MAY-23      NO
    Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
23_041sd6s5
    Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
    Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

```

7	24	A	17-MAY-23	3009473	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
24_051sd6t9						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
8	25	A	17-MAY-23	3009502	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
25_061sd6uc						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
9	26	A	17-MAY-23	3009548	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
26_071sd6vf						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
10	27	A	17-MAY-23	3009576	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
27_081sd70i						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
11	28	A	17-MAY-23	3009590	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
28_091sd71l						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
12	29	A	17-MAY-23	3009619	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
29_0a1sd72o						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
13	30	A	17-MAY-23	3009648	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
30_0b1sd73r						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
14	31	A	17-MAY-23	3009671	17-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
31_0c1sd74u						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						

```

Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

15      32      A 17-MAY-23      3009729      17-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
32_0d1sd762
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

16      33      A 17-MAY-23      3009743      17-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
33_0e1sd775
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

17      34      A 17-MAY-23      3009771      17-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
34_0f1sd788
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

18      35      A 17-MAY-23      3009805      17-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
35_0g1sd79b
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

```

RMAN>

- Report schema from Oracle RMAN command prompt to observe that current active database data files are in primary storage ASM +DATA disk group.

```

RMAN> report schema;

Report of database schema for database with db_unique_name DB1

List of Permanent Datafiles
=====
File Size(MB) Tablespace          RB segs Datafile Name
-----
1      1060      SYSTEM          YES
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/system.257.1136666315
3      810       SYSAUX          NO
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/sysaux.258.1136666361
4      675       UNDOTBS1        YES
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/undotbs1.259.1136666385

```

```

5      400      PDB$SEED:SYSTEM      NO
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/system.266.11366
67165
6      460      PDB$SEED:SYSAUX      NO
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/sysaux.267.11366
67165
7      5        USERS      NO
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/users.260.1136666387
8      230      PDB$SEED:UNDOTBS1    NO
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/undotbs1.268.113
6667165
9      400      DB1_PDB1:SYSTEM      YES
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/system.272.11366
68041
10     490      DB1_PDB1:SYSAUX      NO
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/sysaux.273.11366
68041
11     465      DB1_PDB1:UNDOTBS1    YES
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/undotbs1.271.113
6668041
12     5        DB1_PDB1:USERS      NO
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/users.275.113666
8057
13     400      DB1_PDB2:SYSTEM      YES
+DATA/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/DATAFILE/system.277.11366
68057
14     470      DB1_PDB2:SYSAUX      NO
+DATA/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/DATAFILE/sysaux.278.11366
68057
15     235      DB1_PDB2:UNDOTBS1    YES
+DATA/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/DATAFILE/undotbs1.276.113
6668057
16     5        DB1_PDB2:USERS      NO
+DATA/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/DATAFILE/users.280.113666
8071
17     400      DB1_PDB3:SYSTEM      YES
+DATA/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/DATAFILE/system.282.11366
68073
18     470      DB1_PDB3:SYSAUX      NO
+DATA/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/DATAFILE/sysaux.283.11366
68073
19     235      DB1_PDB3:UNDOTBS1    YES
+DATA/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/DATAFILE/undotbs1.281.113
6668073
20     5        DB1_PDB3:USERS      NO
+DATA/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/DATAFILE/users.285.113666

```

8087

21 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.286.11370182  
39

22 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.287.11370183  
11

23 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.288.11370183  
59

24 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.289.11370184  
05

25 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.290.11370184  
43

26 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.291.11370184  
81

27 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.292.11370185  
23

28 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.293.11370187  
07

29 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.294.11370187  
45

30 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.295.11370187  
87

31 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.296.11370188  
37

32 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.297.11370189  
35

33 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.298.11370190  
77

34 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.299.11370191  
17

35 4096 DB1\_PDB1:SOE NO  
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/DATAFILE/soe.300.11370191  
81

## List of Temporary Files

=====

File	Size (MB)	Tablespace	Maxsize (MB)	Tempfile Name
1	123	TEMP	32767	+DATA/DB1/TEMPFILE/temp.265.113666447
2	123	PDB\$SEED:TEMP	32767	+DATA/DB1/FB864A929AEB79B9E053630F1EAC7046/TEMPFILE/temp.269.1136667185
3	10240	DB1_PDB1:TEMP	32767	+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/TEMPFILE/temp.274.1136668051
4	123	DB1_PDB2:TEMP	32767	+DATA/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/TEMPFILE/temp.279.1136668067
5	123	DB1_PDB3:TEMP	32767	+DATA/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/TEMPFILE/temp.284.1136668081

RMAN>

### 9. Validate database image copy from OS NFS mount point.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-99 ~]$ ls -l /nfsfsxn/oracopy/
total 70585148
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:09 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_021sd6pv
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:10 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_031sd6r2
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:10 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_041sd6s5
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:11 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_051sd6t9
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:11 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_061sd6uc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:12 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_071sd6vf
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:13 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_081sd70i
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:13 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_091sd71l
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:14 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_0a1sd72o
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:14 data_D-DB1_I-
```

```

1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_0b1sd73r
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:15 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_0c1sd74u
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:16 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_0d1sd762
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:16 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_0e1sd775
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:17 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_0f1sd788
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 4294975488 May 17 18:17 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_0g1sd79b
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 513810432 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-10_0k1sd7bb
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 492838912 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-14_0l1sd7bi
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 492838912 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-18_0m1sd7bq
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 849354752 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-3_0i1sd7at
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 482353152 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-6_0o1sd7c8
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 1111498752 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_0h1sd7ae
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 419438592 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-13_0r1sd7ct
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 419438592 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-17_0s1sd7d4
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 419438592 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-5_0p1sd7cf
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 419438592 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-9_0q1sd7cm
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 487596032 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-11_0n1sd7c1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 246423552 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-15_0t1sd7db
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 246423552 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_0u1sd7de
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 707796992 May 17 18:18 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-4_0j1sd7b4
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 241180672 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-8_0v1sd7di
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 5251072 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-12_1l1sd7dm
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 5251072 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-16_1t1sd7dn
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm 5251072 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-

```



```
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_131sd7do  
-rw-r----- 1 oracle asm      5251072 May 17 18:19 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-7_101sd7d1
```

This completes the setup of Oracle database standby image copy backup and merge.

### **Switch Oracle DB to image copy for quick recovery**

In the event of a failure due to primary storage issue such as data loss or corruption, database can be quickly switched over to image copy on FSx ONTAP NFS mount and recovered to current state without database restore. Eliminating media restoration speeds up the database recovery tremendously for a VLDB. This use case assumes that the database host instance is intact and database control file, archived and current logs are all available for recovery.

1. Login to EC2 DB server host as oracle user and create a test table before switch over.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-99 ~]$ sudo su
[root@ip-172-30-15-99 ec2-user]# su - oracle
Last login: Thu May 18 14:22:34 UTC 2023
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-99 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Thu May 18 14:30:36
2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> show pdbs

          CON_ID  CON_NAME                                OPEN MODE  RESTRICTED
-----
          2  PDB$SEED                                READ ONLY  NO
          3  DB1_PDB1                                READ WRITE NO
          4  DB1_PDB2                                READ WRITE NO
          5  DB1_PDB3                                READ WRITE NO

SQL> alter session set container=db1_pdb1;

Session altered.

SQL> create table test (id integer, dt timestamp, event
varchar(100));

Table created.

SQL> insert into test values(1, sysdate, 'test oracle incremental
merge switch to copy');

1 row created.
```

```
SQL> commit;
```

```
Commit complete.
```

```
SQL> select * from test;
```

```
          ID
-----
DT
-----
EVENT
-----
          1
18-MAY-23 02.35.37.000000 PM
test oracle incremental merge switch to copy
```

```
SQL>
```

## 2. Simulate a failure by shutdown abort database, then start up oracle in mount stage.

```
SQL> shutdown abort;
```

```
ORACLE instance shut down.
```

```
SQL> startup mount;
```

```
ORACLE instance started.
```

```
Total System Global Area 1.2885E+10 bytes
Fixed Size                  9177880 bytes
Variable Size              1778384896 bytes
Database Buffers          1.1073E+10 bytes
Redo Buffers               24375296 bytes
Database mounted.
SQL>
```

## 3. As oracle user, connect to Oracle database via RMAN to switch database to copy.

```
RMAN> switch database to copy;
```

```
datafile 1 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_0h1sd7ae"
datafile 3 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-3_0i1sd7at"
```

datafile 4 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-4\_0j1sd7b4"  
datafile 5 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-5\_0p1sd7cf"  
datafile 6 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-6\_0o1sd7c8"  
datafile 7 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-7\_101sd7d1"  
datafile 8 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-8\_0v1sd7di"  
datafile 9 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-9\_0q1sd7cm"  
datafile 10 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-10\_0k1sd7bb"  
datafile 11 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-11\_0n1sd7c1"  
datafile 12 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-12\_111sd7dm"  
datafile 13 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-13\_0r1sd7ct"  
datafile 14 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-14\_0l1sd7bi"  
datafile 15 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-15\_0t1sd7db"  
datafile 16 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-16\_121sd7dn"  
datafile 17 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-17\_0s1sd7d4"  
datafile 18 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-18\_0m1sd7bq"  
datafile 19 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-19\_0u1sd7de"  
datafile 20 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-20\_131sd7do"  
datafile 21 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-21\_021sd6pv"  
datafile 22 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-22\_031sd6r2"  
datafile 23 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-23\_041sd6s5"  
datafile 24 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-24\_051sd6t9"  
datafile 25 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-25\_061sd6uc"  
datafile 26 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-26\_071sd6vf"

```
datafile 27 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_081sd70i"
datafile 28 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_091sd711"
datafile 29 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_0a1sd72o"
datafile 30 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_0b1sd73r"
datafile 31 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_0c1sd74u"
datafile 32 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_0d1sd762"
datafile 33 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_0e1sd775"
datafile 34 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_0f1sd788"
datafile 35 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_0g1sd79b"
```

#### 4. Recover and open database to bring it up to current from last incremental backup.

```
RMAN> recover database;

Starting recover at 18-MAY-23
allocated channel: ORA_DISK_1
channel ORA_DISK_1: SID=392 device type=DISK
channel ORA_DISK_1: starting incremental datafile backup set restore
channel ORA_DISK_1: specifying datafile(s) to restore from backup
set
destination for restore of datafile 00009: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-9_0q1sd7cm
destination for restore of datafile 00023: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_041sd6s5
destination for restore of datafile 00027: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_081sd70i
destination for restore of datafile 00031: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_0c1sd74u
destination for restore of datafile 00034: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_0f1sd788
channel ORA_DISK_1: reading from backup piece
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/321sfous_98_1_1
channel ORA_DISK_1: piece handle=/nfsfsxn/oracopy/321sfous_98_1_1
tag=ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
channel ORA_DISK_1: restored backup piece 1
channel ORA_DISK_1: restore complete, elapsed time: 00:00:01
```

```
channel ORA_DISK_1: starting incremental datafile backup set restore
channel ORA_DISK_1: specifying datafile(s) to restore from backup
set
destination for restore of datafile 00010: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-10_0k1sd7bb
destination for restore of datafile 00021: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_021sd6pv
destination for restore of datafile 00025: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_061sd6uc
.
.
.
channel ORA_DISK_1: starting incremental datafile backup set restore
channel ORA_DISK_1: specifying datafile(s) to restore from backup
set
destination for restore of datafile 00016: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-16_121sd7dn
channel ORA_DISK_1: reading from backup piece
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/3i1sfov0_114_1_1
channel ORA_DISK_1: piece handle=/nfsfsxn/oracopy/3i1sfov0_114_1_1
tag=ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
channel ORA_DISK_1: restored backup piece 1
channel ORA_DISK_1: restore complete, elapsed time: 00:00:01
channel ORA_DISK_1: starting incremental datafile backup set restore
channel ORA_DISK_1: specifying datafile(s) to restore from backup
set
destination for restore of datafile 00020: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_131sd7do
channel ORA_DISK_1: reading from backup piece
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/3j1sfov0_115_1_1
channel ORA_DISK_1: piece handle=/nfsfsxn/oracopy/3j1sfov0_115_1_1
tag=ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
channel ORA_DISK_1: restored backup piece 1
channel ORA_DISK_1: restore complete, elapsed time: 00:00:01

starting media recovery
media recovery complete, elapsed time: 00:00:01

Finished recover at 18-MAY-23

RMAN> alter database open;

Statement processed

RMAN>
```

5. Check database structure from sqlplus after recovery to observe that all database data files with exception of control, temp, and current log files are now switched over to copy on FSx ONTAP NFS file system.

```
SQL> select name from v$datafile
2 union
3 select name from v$tempfile
4 union
5 select name from v$controlfile
6 union
7 select member from v$logfile;
```

NAME

```
-----
-----
+DATA/DB1/CONTROLFILE/current.261.1136666435
+DATA/DB1/FB864A929AEB79B9E053630F1EAC7046/TEMPFILE/temp.269.1136667
185
+DATA/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/TEMPFILE/temp.274.1136668
051
+DATA/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/TEMPFILE/temp.279.1136668
067
+DATA/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/TEMPFILE/temp.284.1136668
081
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_1.262.1136666437
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_2.263.1136666437
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_3.264.1136666437
+DATA/DB1/TEMPFILE/temp.265.1136666447
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_021sd6pv
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_031sd6r2
```

NAME

```
-----
-----
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_041sd6s5
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_051sd6t9
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_061sd6uc
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_071sd6vf
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_081sd70i
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_091sd711
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_0a1sd72o
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_0b1sd73r
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_0c1sd74u
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_0d1sd762
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_0e1sd775
```

```
NAME
```

```
-----  
-----  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_0f1sd788  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_0g1sd79b  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-10_0k1sd7bb  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-14_0l1sd7bi  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-18_0m1sd7bq  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-3_0i1sd7at  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-6_0o1sd7c8  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-13_0r1sd7ct  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-17_0s1sd7d4  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_0h1sd7ae  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-5_0p1sd7cf
```

```
NAME
```

```
-----  
-----  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-9_0q1sd7cm  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-11_0n1sd7c1  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-15_0t1sd7db  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_0u1sd7de  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-4_0j1sd7b4  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-8_0v1sd7di  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-12_1l1sd7dm  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-16_121sd7dn  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_131sd7do  
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-7_101sd7dl
```

```
43 rows selected.
```

```
SQL>
```

6. From SQL plus, check the content of test table we have inserted before the switch over to copy



```

SQL> show pdbs

  CON_ID  CON_NAME                                OPEN MODE  RESTRICTED
-----  -
      2  PDB$SEED                                READ ONLY  NO
      3  DB1_PDB1                                READ WRITE NO
      4  DB1_PDB2                                READ WRITE NO
      5  DB1_PDB3                                READ WRITE NO
SQL> alter session set container=db1_pdb1;

Session altered.

SQL> select * from test;

      ID
-----
DT
-----
EVENT
-----

      1
18-MAY-23 02.35.37.000000 PM
test oracle incremental merge switch to copy

SQL>

```

7. You could run the Oracle database in FSx NFS mount for an extended period without a performance penalty because FSx ONTAP is redundant production-grade storage that delivers high performance. When the primary storage issue is fixed, you can swing back to it by reversing the incremental backup merge processes with minimal downtime.

### Oracle DB recovery from image copy to different EC2 DB instance host

In a failure when both primary storage and EC2 DB instance host are lost, the recovery can not be conducted from the original server. Fortunately, you still have an Oracle database backup image copy on the redundant FSxN NFS file system. You could quickly provision another identical EC2 DB instance and easily mount the image copy of your VLDB to the new EC2 DB host via NFS to run recovery. In this section, we will demonstrate the step-by-step procedures for doing so.

1. Insert a row to test table we have created previously for Oracle database restoring to alternative host validation.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-99 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Tue May 30 17:21:05
2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> show pdbs

          CON_ID CON_NAME                                OPEN MODE  RESTRICTED
-----
          2 PDB$SEED                                READ ONLY  NO
          3 DB1_PDB1                                READ WRITE NO
          4 DB1_PDB2                                READ WRITE NO
          5 DB1_PDB3                                READ WRITE NO

SQL> alter session set container=db1_pdb1;

Session altered.

SQL> insert into test values(2, sysdate, 'test recovery on a new EC2
instance host with image copy on FSxN');

1 row created.

SQL> commit;

Commit complete.

SQL> select * from test;
```

```

          ID
-----
DT
-----
EVENT
-----
          1
18-MAY-23 02.35.37.000000 PM
test oracle incremental merge switch to copy

          2
30-MAY-23 05.23.11.000000 PM
test recovery on a new EC2 instance host with image copy on FSxN

SQL>

```

2. As oracle user, run RMAN incremental backup and merge to flush the transaction to backup set on FSxN NFS mount.

```

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-99 ~]$ rman target / nocatalog

Recovery Manager: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Tue May 30
17:26:03 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights
reserved.

connected to target database: DB1 (DBID=1730530050)
using target database control file instead of recovery catalog

RMAN> @rman_bkup_merge.cmd

```

3. Shutdown primary EC2 DB instance host to simulate a total failure of storage and DB server host.
4. Provision a new EC2 DB instance host ora\_02 with same OS and version via AWS EC2 console. Configure OS kernel with same patches as primary EC2 DB server host, Oracle preinstall RPM, and add swap space to the host as well. Install same version and patches of Oracle as in primary EC2 DB server host with software only option. These tasks can be automated with NetApp automation toolkit as available from below links.

Toolkit: [na\\_oracle19c\\_deploy](#)

Documentation: [Automated Deployment of Oracle19c for ONTAP on NFS](#)

5. Configure oracle environment similiarly to primary EC2 DB instance host ora\_01, such as oratab, oralnst.loc, and oracle user .bash\_profile. It is a good practice to backup those files to FSxN NFS mount point.
6. The Oracle database backup image copy on FSxN NFS mount is stored on a FSx cluster that spans AWS availability zones for redundancy, high avilability, and high performance. The NFS file system can be easily mounted to a new server as far as the networking is reachable. The following procedures mount the image copy of an Oracle VLDB backup to newly provsioned EC2 DB instance host for recovery.

As ec2-user, create the mount point.

```
sudo mkdir /nfsfsxn
```

As ec2-user, mount the NFS volume that stored Oracle VLDB backup image copy.

```
sudo mount 172.30.15.19:/ora_01_copy /nfsfsxn -o  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsize=262144,wsiz=262144,noi  
tr
```

7. Validate the Oracle database backup image copy on FSxN NFS mount point.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$ ls -ltr /nfsfsxn/oracopy  
total 78940700  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 482353152 May 26 18:45 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-6_4m1t508t  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 419438592 May 26 18:45 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-5_4q1t509n  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 241180672 May 26 18:45 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-8_4t1t50a6  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 450560 May 30 15:29 6b1tf6b8_203_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 663552 May 30 15:29 6c1tf6b8_204_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 122880 May 30 15:29 6d1tf6b8_205_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 507904 May 30 15:29 6e1tf6b8_206_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4259840 May 30 15:29 6f1tf6b9_207_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 9060352 May 30 15:29 6h1tf6b9_209_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 442368 May 30 15:29 6i1tf6b9_210_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 475136 May 30 15:29 6j1tf6bb_211_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 48660480 May 30 15:29 6g1tf6b9_208_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 589824 May 30 15:29 6l1tf6bb_213_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 606208 May 30 15:29 6m1tf6bb_214_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 368640 May 30 15:29 6o1tf6bb_216_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 368640 May 30 15:29 6p1tf6bc_217_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 57344 May 30 15:29 6r1tf6bc_219_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 57344 May 30 15:29 6s1tf6bc_220_1_1  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 57344 May 30 15:29 6t1tf6bc_221_1_1
```

```
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_3q1t4ut3  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_3o1t4ut2  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_461t4vt7  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_3s1t4v1a  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_3p1t4ut3  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_4a1t5015  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_481t4vt7  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_4d1t5058  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_451t4vt7  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_3r1t4ut3  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 555753472 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-10_4i1t5083  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 429924352 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-9_4n1t509m  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_491t5014  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_471t4vt7  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_4e1t5059  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_4b1t501u  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 487596032 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-11_411t508t  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_4c1t501v  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 5251072 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-12_4v1t50aa  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 1121984512 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_4f1t506m  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 707796992 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-4_4h1t5083  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 534781952 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-14_4j1t508s  
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 429924352 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-  
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-13_4o1t509m
```

```

-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 429924352 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-17_4p1t509m
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 534781952 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-18_4k1t508t
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 1027612672 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-3_4g1t506m
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 5251072 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-7_4u1t50a6
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 246423552 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-15_4r1t50a6
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 5251072 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-16_501t50ad
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 246423552 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_4s1t50a6
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 5251072 May 30 17:26 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_511t50ad
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 2318712832 May 30 17:32 721tfd6b_226_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 1813143552 May 30 17:33 701tfd6a_224_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 966656 May 30 17:33 731tfdic_227_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 5980160 May 30 17:33 751tfdij_229_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 458752 May 30 17:33 761tfdin_230_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 458752 May 30 17:33 771tfdiq_231_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 11091968 May 30 17:33 741tfdij_228_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 401408 May 30 17:33 791tfdit_233_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 2070708224 May 30 17:33 6v1tfd6a_223_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 376832 May 30 17:33 7a1tfdit_234_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 1874903040 May 30 17:33 711tfd6b_225_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 303104 May 30 17:33 7c1tfdiu_236_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 319488 May 30 17:33 7d1tfdi_237_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 57344 May 30 17:33 7f1tfdi_239_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 57344 May 30 17:33 7g1tfdi_240_1_1
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 57344 May 30 17:33 7h1tfdi_241_1_1
-rw-r--r--. 1 oracle 54331 12720 May 30 17:33 db1_ctl.sql
-rw-r-----. 1 oracle 54331 11600384 May 30 17:54 bct_db1.ctf

```

8. Verify the available Oracle archived logs on the FSxN NFS mount for recovery and note the last log file log sequence number. In this case, it is 175. Our recovery point is up to log sequence number 176.

```

[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$ ls -ltr
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30
total 5714400
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 321024 May 30 14:59
o1_mf_1_140__003t9mvn_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 48996352 May 30 15:29
o1_mf_1_141__01t9qf6r_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 167477248 May 30 15:44

```

```
o1_mf_1_142__02n3x2qb_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 165684736 May 30 15:46
o1_mf_1_143__02rotwyb_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 165636608 May 30 15:49
o1_mf_1_144__02x563wh_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 168408064 May 30 15:51
o1_mf_1_145__031kg2co_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 169446400 May 30 15:54
o1_mf_1_146__035xpcdt_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 167595520 May 30 15:56
o1_mf_1_147__03bds8qf_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 169270272 May 30 15:59
o1_mf_1_148__03gyt7rx_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 170712576 May 30 16:01
o1_mf_1_149__03mfxl7v_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 170744832 May 30 16:04
o1_mf_1_150__03qzz0ty_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 169380864 May 30 16:06
o1_mf_1_151__03wgxdry_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 169833984 May 30 16:09
o1_mf_1_152__040y85v3_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 165134336 May 30 16:20
o1_mf_1_153__04ox946w_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 169929216 May 30 16:22
o1_mf_1_154__04rbv7n8_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 171903488 May 30 16:23
o1_mf_1_155__04tvlyvn_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 179061248 May 30 16:25
o1_mf_1_156__04xgfjtl_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 173593088 May 30 16:26
o1_mf_1_157__04zyg8hw_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 175999488 May 30 16:27
o1_mf_1_158__052gp9mt_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 179092992 May 30 16:29
o1_mf_1_159__0551wk7s_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 175524352 May 30 16:30
o1_mf_1_160__057l46my_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 173949440 May 30 16:32
o1_mf_1_161__05b2dmwp_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 184166912 May 30 16:33
o1_mf_1_162__05drbj8n_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 173026816 May 30 16:35
o1_mf_1_163__05h8lm1h_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 174286336 May 30 16:36
o1_mf_1_164__05krsqmh_.arc
-r--r----- . 1 oracle 54331 166092288 May 30 16:37
```

```

o1_mf_1_165__05n378pw_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 177640960 May 30 16:39
o1_mf_1_166__05pmg74l_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 173972992 May 30 16:40
o1_mf_1_167__05s3o01r_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 178474496 May 30 16:41
o1_mf_1_168__05vmwt34_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 177694208 May 30 16:43
o1_mf_1_169__05y45qdd_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 170814976 May 30 16:44
o1_mf_1_170__060kgh33_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 177325056 May 30 16:46
o1_mf_1_171__063ltvgv_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 164455424 May 30 16:47
o1_mf_1_172__065d94fq_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 178252288 May 30 16:48
o1_mf_1_173__067wnwy8_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 170579456 May 30 16:50
o1_mf_1_174__06b9zdh8_.arc
-r--r-----. 1 oracle 54331 93928960 May 30 17:26
o1_mf_1_175__08c7jc2b_.arc
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$

```

9. As oracle user, set ORACLE\_HOME variable to current Oracle installation on new EC2 instance DB host ora\_02, ORACLE\_SID to primary Oracle instance SID. In this case, it is db1.
10. As oracle user, create a generic Oracle init file in \$ORACLE\_HOME/dbs directory with proper admin directories configured. Most importantly, have Oracle flash recovery area point to FSxN NFS mount path as defined in primary Oracle VLDB instance. flash recovery area configuration is demonstrated in section Setup Oracle RMAN incremental merge to image copy on FSx. Set the Oracle control file to FSx ONTAP NFS file system.

```
vi $ORACLE_HOME/dbs/initdb1.ora
```

With following example entries:



```
*.audit_file_dest='/u01/app/oracle/admin/db1/adump'  
*.audit_trail='db'  
*.compatible='19.0.0'  
*.control_files=('/nfsfsxn/oracopy/db1.ctl')  
*.db_block_size=8192  
*.db_create_file_dest='/nfsfsxn/oracopy/'  
*.db_domain='demo.netapp.com'  
*.db_name='db1'  
*.db_recovery_file_dest_size=85899345920  
*.db_recovery_file_dest='/nfsfsxn/archlog/'  
*.diagnostic_dest='/u01/app/oracle'  
*.dispatchers='(PROTOCOL=TCP) (SERVICE=db1XDB)'  
*.enable_pluggable_database=true  
*.local_listener='LISTENER'  
*.nls_language='AMERICAN'  
*.nls_territory='AMERICA'  
*.open_cursors=300  
*.pga_aggregate_target=1024m  
*.processes=320  
*.remote_login_passwordfile='EXCLUSIVE'  
*.sga_target=10240m  
*.undo_tablespace='UNDOTBS1'
```

The above init file should be replaced by restored backup init file from primary Oracle DB server in the case of discrepancy.

11. As oracle user, launch RMAN to run Oracle recovery on a new EC2 DB instance host.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-124 dbs]$ rman target / nocatalog;

Recovery Manager: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed May 31
00:56:07 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights
reserved.

connected to target database (not started)

RMAN> startup nomount;

Oracle instance started

Total System Global Area      12884900632 bytes

Fixed Size                     9177880 bytes
Variable Size                  1778384896 bytes
Database Buffers               11072962560 bytes
Redo Buffers                    24375296 bytes
```

12. Set database ID. The database ID can be retrieved from Oracle file name of image copy on FSx NFS mount point.

```
RMAN> set dbid = 1730530050;

executing command: SET DBID
```

13. Restore controlfile from autobackup. If Oracle controlfile and spfile autobackup is enabled, they are backed up in every incremental backup and merge cycle. The latest backup will be restored if multiple copies are available.

```

RMAN> restore controlfile from autobackup;

Starting restore at 31-MAY-23
allocated channel: ORA_DISK_1
channel ORA_DISK_1: SID=2 device type=DISK

recovery area destination: /nfsfsxn/archlog
database name (or database unique name) used for search: DB1
channel ORA_DISK_1: AUTOBACKUP
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/autobackup/2023_05_30/o1_mf_s_1138210401__08qlx
rrr_.bkp found in the recovery area
channel ORA_DISK_1: looking for AUTOBACKUP on day: 20230531
channel ORA_DISK_1: looking for AUTOBACKUP on day: 20230530
channel ORA_DISK_1: restoring control file from AUTOBACKUP
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/autobackup/2023_05_30/o1_mf_s_1138210401__08qlx
rrr_.bkp
channel ORA_DISK_1: control file restore from AUTOBACKUP complete
output file name=/nfsfsxn/oracopy/db1.ct1
Finished restore at 31-MAY-23

```

14. Restore init file from spfile to a /tmp folder for updating parameter file later to match with primary DB instance.

```

RMAN> restore spfile to pfile '/tmp/archive/initdb1.ora' from
autobackup;

Starting restore at 31-MAY-23
using channel ORA_DISK_1

recovery area destination: /nfsfsxn/archlog
database name (or database unique name) used for search: DB1
channel ORA_DISK_1: AUTOBACKUP
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/autobackup/2023_05_30/o1_mf_s_1138210401__08qlx
rrr_.bkp found in the recovery area
channel ORA_DISK_1: looking for AUTOBACKUP on day: 20230531
channel ORA_DISK_1: looking for AUTOBACKUP on day: 20230530
channel ORA_DISK_1: restoring spfile from AUTOBACKUP
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/autobackup/2023_05_30/o1_mf_s_1138210401__08qlx
rrr_.bkp
channel ORA_DISK_1: SPFILE restore from AUTOBACKUP complete
Finished restore at 31-MAY-23

```

15. Mount control file and validate the database backup image copy.

```
RMAN> alter database mount;
```

```
released channel: ORA_DISK_1  
Statement processed
```

```
RMAN> list copy of database tag 'OraCopyBKUPonFSxN_level_0';
```

```
List of Datafile Copies
```

```
=====
```

Key	File S	Completion Time	Ckp SCN	Ckp Time	Sparse
316	1 A	30-MAY-23	4120170	30-MAY-23	NO
	Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_4f1t506m				
	Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0				
322	3 A	30-MAY-23	4120175	30-MAY-23	NO
	Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-3_4g1t506m				
	Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0				
317	4 A	30-MAY-23	4120179	30-MAY-23	NO
	Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-4_4h1t5083				
	Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0				
221	5 A	26-MAY-23	2383520	12-MAY-23	NO
	Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-5_4q1t509n				
	Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0				
	Container ID: 2, PDB Name: PDB\$SEED				
216	6 A	26-MAY-23	2383520	12-MAY-23	NO
	Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-6_4m1t508t				
	Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0				
	Container ID: 2, PDB Name: PDB\$SEED				
323	7 A	30-MAY-23	4120207	30-MAY-23	NO
	Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-7_4u1t50a6				
	Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0				
227	8 A	26-MAY-23	2383520	12-MAY-23	NO
	Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-8_4t1t50a6				

```

Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 2, PDB Name: PDB$SEED

308      9      A 30-MAY-23      4120158      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-9_4nlt509m
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

307      10     A 30-MAY-23      4120166      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSAUX_FNO-10_4ilt5083
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

313      11     A 30-MAY-23      4120154      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-11_4l1t508t
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

315      12     A 30-MAY-23      4120162      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
12_4vlt50aa
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

319      13     A 30-MAY-23      4120191      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-13_4olt509m
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

318      14     A 30-MAY-23      4120183      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSAUX_FNO-14_4jlt508s
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

324      15     A 30-MAY-23      4120199      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-15_4r1t50a6
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

325      16     A 30-MAY-23      4120211      30-MAY-23      NO

```

```

Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
16_501t50ad
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1_PDB2

320    17    A 30-MAY-23          4120195    30-MAY-23    NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-17_4p1t509m
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

321    18    A 30-MAY-23          4120187    30-MAY-23    NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYS_AUX_FNO-18_4k1t508t
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

326    19    A 30-MAY-23          4120203    30-MAY-23    NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_4s1t50a6
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

327    20    A 30-MAY-23          4120216    30-MAY-23    NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
20_511t50ad
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3

298    21    A 30-MAY-23          4120166    30-MAY-23    NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
21_3o1t4ut2
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

302    22    A 30-MAY-23          4120154    30-MAY-23    NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
22_3p1t4ut3
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

297    23    A 30-MAY-23          4120158    30-MAY-23    NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
23_3q1t4ut3
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

```

306	24	A	30-MAY-23	4120162	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
24_3r1t4ut3						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
300	25	A	30-MAY-23	4120166	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
25_3s1t4v1a						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
305	26	A	30-MAY-23	4120154	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
26_451t4vt7						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
299	27	A	30-MAY-23	4120158	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
27_461t4vt7						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
310	28	A	30-MAY-23	4120162	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
28_471t4vt7						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
303	29	A	30-MAY-23	4120166	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
29_481t4vt7						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
309	30	A	30-MAY-23	4120154	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
30_491t5014						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
301	31	A	30-MAY-23	4120158	30-MAY-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-						
31_4a1t5015						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						

```

Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

312      32      A 30-MAY-23      4120162      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
32_4b1t501u
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

314      33      A 30-MAY-23      4120162      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
33_4c1t501v
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

304      34      A 30-MAY-23      4120158      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
34_4d1t5058
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

311      35      A 30-MAY-23      4120154      30-MAY-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
35_4e1t5059
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

```

16. Switch database to copy to run recovery without database restore.

```

RMAN> switch database to copy;

Starting implicit crosscheck backup at 31-MAY-23
allocated channel: ORA_DISK_1
channel ORA_DISK_1: SID=11 device type=DISK
Crosschecked 33 objects
Finished implicit crosscheck backup at 31-MAY-23

Starting implicit crosscheck copy at 31-MAY-23
using channel ORA_DISK_1
Crosschecked 68 objects
Finished implicit crosscheck copy at 31-MAY-23

searching for all files in the recovery area
cataloging files...
cataloging done

List of Cataloged Files

```



=====  
File Name:

/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/autobackup/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_s\_1138210401\_\_08qlx  
rrr\_.bkp

datafile 1 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-1\_4f1t506m"  
datafile 3 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-3\_4g1t506m"  
datafile 4 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-4\_4h1t5083"  
datafile 5 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-5\_4q1t509n"  
datafile 6 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-6\_4m1t508t"  
datafile 7 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-7\_4u1t50a6"  
datafile 8 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-8\_4t1t50a6"  
datafile 9 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-9\_4n1t509m"  
datafile 10 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-10\_4i1t5083"  
datafile 11 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-11\_4l1t508t"  
datafile 12 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-12\_4v1t50aa"  
datafile 13 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-13\_4o1t509m"  
datafile 14 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-14\_4j1t508s"  
datafile 15 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-15\_4r1t50a6"  
datafile 16 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-16\_501t50ad"  
datafile 17 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-17\_4p1t509m"  
datafile 18 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-18\_4k1t508t"  
datafile 19 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-19\_4s1t50a6"  
datafile 20 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-20\_511t50ad"  
datafile 21 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-21\_3o1t4ut2"  
datafile 22 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-

```
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_3p1t4ut3"
datafile 23 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_3q1t4ut3"
datafile 24 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_3r1t4ut3"
datafile 25 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_3s1t4v1a"
datafile 26 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_451t4vt7"
datafile 27 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_461t4vt7"
datafile 28 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_471t4vt7"
datafile 29 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_481t4vt7"
datafile 30 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_491t5014"
datafile 31 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_4a1t5015"
datafile 32 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_4b1t501u"
datafile 33 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_4c1t501v"
datafile 34 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_4d1t5058"
datafile 35 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-
DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_4e1t5059"
```

#### 17. Run Oracle recovery up to last available archive log in flash recovery area.

```
RMAN> run {
2> set until sequence=176;
3> recover database;
4> }

executing command: SET until clause

Starting recover at 31-MAY-23
using channel ORA_DISK_1

starting media recovery

archived log for thread 1 with sequence 142 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_142__02n3x2qb_.ar
```

c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 143 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_143\_\_02rotwyb\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 144 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_144\_\_02x563wh\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 145 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_145\_\_031kg2co\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 146 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_146\_\_035xpcdt\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 147 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_147\_\_03bds8qf\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 148 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_148\_\_03gyt7rx\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 149 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_149\_\_03mfxl7v\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 150 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_150\_\_03qzz0ty\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 151 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_151\_\_03wgxdry\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 152 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_152\_\_040y85v3\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 153 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_153\_\_04ox946w\_.ar  
c  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 154 is already on disk as

```
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_154__04rbv7n8_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 155 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_155__04tvlyvn_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 156 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_156__04xgfjtl_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 157 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_157__04zyg8hw_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 158 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_158__052gp9mt_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 159 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_159__0551wk7s_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 160 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_160__057146my_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 161 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_161__05b2dmwp_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 162 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_162__05drbj8n_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 163 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_163__05h81mlh_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 164 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_164__05krsqmh_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 165 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_165__05n378pw_.ar
```

```
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 166 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_166__05pmg741_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 167 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_167__05s3o01r_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 168 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_168__05vmwt34_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 169 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_169__05y45qdd_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 170 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_170__060kgh33_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 171 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_171__0631tvgv_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 172 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_172__065d94fq_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 173 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_173__067wnwy8_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 174 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_174__06b9zdh8_.ar
c
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 175 is already on disk as
file
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_175__08c7jc2b_.ar
c
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_142__02n3x2q
b_.arc thread=1 sequence=142
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_143__02rotwy
```

b\_.arc thread=1 sequence=143  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_144\_\_02x563w  
h\_.arc thread=1 sequence=144  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_145\_\_031kg2c  
o\_.arc thread=1 sequence=145  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_146\_\_035xpcd  
t\_.arc thread=1 sequence=146  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_147\_\_03bds8q  
f\_.arc thread=1 sequence=147  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_148\_\_03gyt7r  
x\_.arc thread=1 sequence=148  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_149\_\_03mfx17  
v\_.arc thread=1 sequence=149  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_150\_\_03qzz0t  
y\_.arc thread=1 sequence=150  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_151\_\_03wgxdr  
y\_.arc thread=1 sequence=151  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_152\_\_040y85v  
3\_.arc thread=1 sequence=152  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_153\_\_04ox946  
w\_.arc thread=1 sequence=153  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_154\_\_04rbv7n  
8\_.arc thread=1 sequence=154  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_155\_\_04tvlyv  
n\_.arc thread=1 sequence=155  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_156\_\_04xgfjt  
l\_.arc thread=1 sequence=156  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_157\_\_04zyg8h  
w\_.arc thread=1 sequence=157  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_158\_\_052gp9m  
t\_.arc thread=1 sequence=158

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_159\_\_0551wk7  
s\_.arc thread=1 sequence=159

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_160\_\_057146m  
y\_.arc thread=1 sequence=160

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_161\_\_05b2dmw  
p\_.arc thread=1 sequence=161

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_162\_\_05drbj8  
n\_.arc thread=1 sequence=162

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_163\_\_05h81ml  
h\_.arc thread=1 sequence=163

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_164\_\_05krsqm  
h\_.arc thread=1 sequence=164

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_165\_\_05n378p  
w\_.arc thread=1 sequence=165

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_166\_\_05pmg74  
l\_.arc thread=1 sequence=166

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_167\_\_05s3o01  
r\_.arc thread=1 sequence=167

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_168\_\_05vmwt3  
4\_.arc thread=1 sequence=168

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_169\_\_05y45qd  
d\_.arc thread=1 sequence=169

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_170\_\_060kgh3  
3\_.arc thread=1 sequence=170

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_171\_\_0631tv  
g\_.arc thread=1 sequence=171

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_172\_\_065d94f  
q\_.arc thread=1 sequence=172

archived log file

name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_05\_30/o1\_mf\_1\_173\_\_067wnwy  
8\_.arc thread=1 sequence=173

archived log file

```
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_174__06b9zdh
8_.arc thread=1 sequence=174
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_05_30/o1_mf_1_175__08c7jc2
b_.arc thread=1 sequence=175
media recovery complete, elapsed time: 00:48:34
Finished recover at 31-MAY-23
```



For faster recovery, enable parallel sessions with `recovery_parallelism` parameter or specify degree of parallel in recovery command for database recovery: `RECOVER DATABASE PARALLEL (DEGREE d INSTANCES DEFAULT);`. In general, degrees of parallelism should be equal to number of CPU cores on the host.

18. Exit RMAN, login to Oracle as oracle user via sqlplus to open database and reset log after an incomplete recovery.



```
SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;
```

```
NAME          OPEN_MODE
-----
DB1           MOUNTED
```

```
SQL> select member from v$logfile;
```

```
MEMBER
-----
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_3.264.1136666437
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_2.263.1136666437
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_1.262.1136666437
```

```
SQL> alter database rename file
'+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_1.262.1136666437' to
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo01.log';
```

Database altered.

```
SQL> alter database rename file
'+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_2.263.1136666437' to
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo02.log';
```

Database altered.

```
SQL> alter database rename file
'+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group_3.264.1136666437' to
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo03.log';
```

Database altered.

```
SQL> alter database open resetlogs;
```

Database altered.

19. Validate the database restored to new host that has the row we have inserted before primary database failure.

```
SQL> show pdbs
```

CON_ID	CON_NAME	OPEN MODE	RESTRICTED
2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	DB1_PDB1	READ WRITE	NO
4	DB1_PDB2	READ WRITE	NO
5	DB1_PDB3	READ WRITE	NO

```
SQL> alter session set container=db1_pdb1;
```

Session altered.

```
SQL> select * from test;
```

EVENT	ID	DT
	1	18-MAY-23 02.35.37.000000 PM
test oracle incremental merge switch to copy		
	2	30-MAY-23 05.23.11.000000 PM
test recovery on a new EC2 instance host with image copy on FSxN		

## 20. Other post recovery tasks

Add FSxN NFS mount to fstab so that the NFS file system will be mounted when EC2 instance host rebooted.

As EC2 user, vi /etc/fstab and add following entry:

```
172.30.15.19:/ora_01_copy          /nfsfsxn          nfs
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsize=262144,wsiz=262144,noin
tr 0          0
```

Update the Oracle init file from primary database init file backup that is restored to /tmp/archive and create spfile as needed.

This completes the Oracle VLDB database recovery from backup image copy on FSxN NFS file system to a new EC2 DB instance host.

**Clone Oracle standby image copy for other use cases**

Another benefit of using AWS FSx ONTAP for staging Oracle VLDB image copy is that it can be FlexCloned to serve many other purposes with minimal additional storage investment. In the following use case, we demonstrate how to snapshot and clone the staging NFS volume on FSx ONTAP for other Oracle use cases such as DEV, UAT, etc.

1. We begin with inserting a row into the same test table we have created before.

```
SQL> insert into test values (3, sysdate, 'test clone on a new EC2
instance host with image copy on FSxN');
```

```
1 row created.
```

```
SQL> select * from test;
```

```
          ID
-----
DT
-----
EVENT
-----
          1
18-MAY-23 02.35.37.000000 PM
test oracle incremental merge switch to copy

          2
30-MAY-23 05.23.11.000000 PM
test recovery on a new EC2 instance host with image copy on FSxN

          ID
-----
DT
-----
EVENT
-----
          3
05-JUN-23 03.19.46.000000 PM
test clone on a new EC2 instance host with image copy on FSxN

SQL>
```

2. Take a RMAN backup and merge to FSx ONTAP database image copy so that the transaction will be captured in the backup set on FSx NFS mount but not merged into copy until cloned database is recovered.

```
RMAN> @/home/oracle/rman_bkup_merge.cmd
```

3. Login to FSx cluster via ssh as fsxadmin user to observe the snapshots created by scheduled backup policy - oracle and take an one-off snapshot so that it will include the transaction we committed in step 1.

```
FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::> vol snapshot create -vserver svm_ora
-volume ora_01_copy -snapshot one-off.2023-06-05-1137 -foreground
true
```

```
FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::> snapshot show
```

```
---Blocks---
```

```
Vserver Volume Snapshot Size
Total% Used%
```

```
-----
```

```
svm_ora ora_01_copy
          daily.2023-06-02_0010 3.59GB
2% 5%
          daily.2023-06-03_0010 1.10GB
1% 1%
          daily.2023-06-04_0010 608KB
0% 0%
          daily.2023-06-05_0010 3.81GB
2% 5%
          one-off.2023-06-05-1137 168KB
0% 0%
          svm_ora_root
          weekly.2023-05-28_0015 1.86MB
0% 78%
          daily.2023-06-04_0010 152KB
0% 22%
          weekly.2023-06-04_0015 1.24MB
0% 70%
          daily.2023-06-05_0010 196KB
0% 27%
          hourly.2023-06-05_1005 156KB
0% 22%
          hourly.2023-06-05_1105 156KB
0% 22%
          hourly.2023-06-05_1205 156KB
0% 22%
          hourly.2023-06-05_1305 156KB
0% 22%
          hourly.2023-06-05_1405 1.87MB
0% 78%
          hourly.2023-06-05_1505 148KB
0% 22%
```

```
15 entries were displayed.
```

4. Clone from the one-off snapshot to be used for standing up a new DB1 clone instance on an alternative EC2 Oracle host. You have the option to clone from any available daily snapshots for volume ora\_01\_copy.

```
FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::> vol clone create -flexclone db1_20230605of
-type RW -parent-vserver svm_ora -parent-volume ora_01_copy
-junction-path /db1_20230605of -junction-active true -parent
-snapshot one-off.2023-06-05-1137
[Job 464] Job succeeded: Successful

FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::>

FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::> vol show db1*
Vserver   Volume           Aggregate      State         Type         Size
Available Used%
-----
-----
svm_ora   db1_20230605of
                aggr1          online        RW           200GB
116.6GB  38%

FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::>
```

5. Turn off snapshot policy for the cloned volume as it inherits parent volume snapshot policy unless you want to protect the cloned volume, then leave it alone.

```
FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::> vol modify -volume db1_20230605of
-snapshot-policy none

Warning: You are changing the Snapshot policy on volume
"db1_20230605of" to "none". Snapshot copies on this volume that do
not match any of the prefixes of the new Snapshot policy will not be
deleted. However, when the new Snapshot policy
                takes effect, depending on the new retention count, any
existing Snapshot copies that continue to use the same prefixes
might be deleted. See the 'volume modify' man page for more
information.
Do you want to continue? {y|n}: y
Volume modify successful on volume db1_20230605of of Vserver
svm_ora.

FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::>
```

6. Login to a new EC2 Linux instance with Oracle software pre-installed with same version and patch level as your primary Oracle EC2 instance and mount the cloned volume.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$ sudo mkdir /nfsfsxn
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$ sudo mount -t nfs
172.30.15.19:/db1_20230605of /nfsfsxn -o
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsiz=262144,wsiz=262144,noi
tr
```

7. Validate the database incremental backup sets, image copy, and available archived logs on FSx NFS mount.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$ ls -ltr /nfsfsxn/oracopy
total 79450332
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 482353152 Jun  1 19:02 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-6_891tkrhr
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 419438592 Jun  1 19:03 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-5_8d1tkril
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 241180672 Jun  1 19:03 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-8_8g1tkrj7
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 912506880 Jun  1 20:21 8n1tkvv2_279_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 925696 Jun  1 20:21 8q1tl05i_282_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 1169014784 Jun  1 20:21 8p1tkvv2_281_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 6455296 Jun  1 20:21 8r1tl05m_283_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 139264 Jun  1 20:21 8t1tl05t_285_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 3514368 Jun  1 20:21 8s1tl05t_284_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 139264 Jun  1 20:21 8u1tl060_286_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 425984 Jun  1 20:21 901tl062_288_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 344064 Jun  1 20:21 911tl062_289_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 245760 Jun  1 20:21 931tl063_291_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 237568 Jun  1 20:21 941tl064_292_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 57344 Jun  1 20:21 961tl065_294_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 57344 Jun  1 20:21 971tl066_295_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 57344 Jun  1 20:21 981tl067_296_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 1040760832 Jun  1 20:23 8m1tkvv2_278_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 932847616 Jun  1 20:24 8o1tkvv2_280_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 1121984512 Jun  5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_821tkrb8
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 1027612672 Jun  5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-3_831tkrd9
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 429924352 Jun  5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-9_8a1tkrhr
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 707796992 Jun  5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-4_851tkrgf
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 534781952 Jun  5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-14_871tkrhr
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 534781952 Jun  5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-18_881tkrhr
```



```

-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 429924352 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-13_8b1tkril
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 429924352 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-17_8c1tkril
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 246423552 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-15_8e1tkril
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 246423552 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_8f1tkrj4
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 5251072 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-7_8h1tkrj9
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 5251072 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-16_8j1tkrja
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 5251072 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_8k1tkrjb
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 5251072 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-12_8i1tkrj9
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 555753472 Jun 5 15:21 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-10_861tkrgo
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 796925952 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-11_841tkrf2
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_7j1tkqk6
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_801tkram
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_7r1tkr32
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_7n1tkqrh
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_7t1tkr3i
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_7v1tkra6
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_7l1tkqk6
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_7p1tkqrq
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_8l1tkrap
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_7u1tkr42
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_7k1tkqk6
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_7m1tkqk6
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun 5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_7q1tkqs1

```

```

-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun  5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_7s1tkr3a
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 4294975488 Jun  5 15:22 data_D-DB1_I-
1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_7o1tkqrj
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 1241432064 Jun  5 15:30 9d1tv06n_301_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 1019805696 Jun  5 15:31 9a1tv06m_298_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331      4612096 Jun  5 15:31 9e1tv01d_302_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331  967163904 Jun  5 15:31 9b1tv06n_299_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331  31563776 Jun  5 15:31 9g1tv01t_304_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331    319488 Jun  5 15:31 9h1tv01t_305_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331   335872 Jun  5 15:31 9i1tv0m0_306_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331   565248 Jun  5 15:31 9k1tv0m1_308_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331   581632 Jun  5 15:31 9l1tv0m5_309_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331  54345728 Jun  5 15:31 9f1tv01t_303_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331   368640 Jun  5 15:31 9n1tv0m5_311_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331   385024 Jun  5 15:31 9o1tv0m6_312_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331  985858048 Jun  5 15:31 9c1tv06n_300_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331    57344 Jun  5 15:31 9q1tv0m7_314_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331    57344 Jun  5 15:31 9r1tv0m8_315_1_1
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331    57344 Jun  5 15:31 9s1tv0m9_316_1_1
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle 54331    12720 Jun  5 15:31 db1_ctl.sql
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331  11600384 Jun  5 15:48 bct_db1.ctf
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$

```

```

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-124 ~]$ ls -l
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05
total 2008864
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331    729088 Jun  5 14:38
o1_mf_1_190_17vwwvt9_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 166651904 Jun  5 14:44
o1_mf_1_191_17vx6vmg_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 167406080 Jun  5 14:47
o1_mf_1_192_17vxctms_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 166868992 Jun  5 14:49
o1_mf_1_193_17vxjjps_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 166087168 Jun  5 14:52
o1_mf_1_194_17vxnxrh_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 175210496 Jun  5 14:54
o1_mf_1_195_17vxswv5_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 167078400 Jun  5 14:57
o1_mf_1_196_17vxylwp_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 169701888 Jun  5 14:59
o1_mf_1_197_17vy3cyw_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 167845376 Jun  5 15:02
o1_mf_1_198_17vy8245_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 170763776 Jun  5 15:05

```

```
o1_mf_1_199_17vydv4c_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 193853440 Jun  5 15:07
o1_mf_1_200_17vykf23_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 165523968 Jun  5 15:09
o1_mf_1_201_17vyp1dh_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 161117184 Jun  5 15:12
o1_mf_1_202_17vyvrm5_.arc
-rw-r----- 1 oracle 54331 10098176 Jun  5 15:21
o1_mf_1_203_17vzdfwm_.arc
```

8. The recovery processes now are similar to previous use case of recovery to a new EC2 DB instance after a failure - set oracle environment (oratab, \$ORACLE\_HOME, \$ORACLE\_SID) to match with primary production instance, create an init file including db\_recovery\_file\_dest\_size and db\_recovery\_file\_dest that point to flash recovery directory on FSx NFS mount. Then, launch RMAN to run recovery. Following are command steps and output.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-124 dbs]$ rman target / nocatalog

Recovery Manager: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed Jun 7
14:44:33 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights
reserved.

connected to target database (not started)

RMAN> startup nomount;

Oracle instance started

Total System Global Area      10737418000 bytes

Fixed Size                     9174800 bytes
Variable Size                  1577058304 bytes
Database Buffers               9126805504 bytes
Redo Buffers                    24379392 bytes

RMAN> set dbid = 1730530050;

executing command: SET DBID

RMAN> restore controlfile from autobackup;

Starting restore at 07-JUN-23
allocated channel: ORA_DISK_1
```

```

channel ORA_DISK_1: SID=2 device type=DISK

recovery area destination: /nfsfsxn/archlog/
database name (or database unique name) used for search: DB1
channel ORA_DISK_1: AUTOBACKUP
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/autobackup/2023_06_05/o1_mf_s_1138721482_17vzyb
vq_.bkp found in the recovery area
channel ORA_DISK_1: looking for AUTOBACKUP on day: 20230607
channel ORA_DISK_1: looking for AUTOBACKUP on day: 20230606
channel ORA_DISK_1: looking for AUTOBACKUP on day: 20230605
channel ORA_DISK_1: restoring control file from AUTOBACKUP
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/autobackup/2023_06_05/o1_mf_s_1138721482_17vzyb
vq_.bkp
channel ORA_DISK_1: control file restore from AUTOBACKUP complete
output file name=/nfsfsxn/oracopy/db1.ct1
Finished restore at 07-JUN-23

```

```

RMAN> alter database mount;

```

```

released channel: ORA_DISK_1
Statement processed

```

```

RMAN> list incarnation;

```

List of Database Incarnations

DB Key	Inc Key	DB Name	DB ID	STATUS	Reset SCN	Reset Time
1	1	DB1	1730530050	PARENT	1	17-APR-19
2	2	DB1	1730530050	CURRENT	1920977	12-MAY-23

```

RMAN> list copy of database tag 'OraCopyBKUPonFSxN_level_0';

```

List of Datafile Copies

=====

Key	File S	Completion Time	Ckp SCN	Ckp Time	Sparse
362	1 A	05-JUN-23	8319160	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_821tkrb8					
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0					
363	3 A	05-JUN-23	8319165	01-JUN-23	NO

```

      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYS_AUX_FNO-3_831tkrd9
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0

365      4      A 05-JUN-23      8319171      01-JUN-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-4_851tkrgf
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0

355      5      A 01-JUN-23      2383520      12-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-5_8dltkri1
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 2, PDB Name: PDB$SEED

349      6      A 01-JUN-23      2383520      12-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYS_AUX_FNO-6_891tkrhr
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 2, PDB Name: PDB$SEED

372      7      A 05-JUN-23      8319201      01-JUN-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
7_8h1tkrj9
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0

361      8      A 01-JUN-23      2383520      12-MAY-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
UNDOTBS1_FNO-8_8g1tkrj7
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 2, PDB Name: PDB$SEED

364      9      A 05-JUN-23      8318717      01-JUN-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYSTEM_FNO-9_8al1tkrhr
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

376      10     A 05-JUN-23      8318714      01-JUN-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-
SYS_AUX_FNO-10_861tkrgo
      Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
      Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

377      11     A 05-JUN-23      8318720      01-JUN-23      NO
      Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-

```

UNDOTBS1\_FNO-11\_841tkrf2  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB1

375      12    A 05-JUN-23            8318719      01-JUN-23      NO  
 Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-  
 12\_8i1tkrj9  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB1

368      13    A 05-JUN-23            8319184      01-JUN-23      NO  
 Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-  
 SYSTEM\_FNO-13\_8b1tkril  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB2

366      14    A 05-JUN-23            8319175      01-JUN-23      NO  
 Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-  
 SYSAUX\_FNO-14\_871tkrhr  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB2

370      15    A 05-JUN-23            8319193      01-JUN-23      NO  
 Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-  
 UNDOTBS1\_FNO-15\_8e1tkril  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB2

373      16    A 05-JUN-23            8319206      01-JUN-23      NO  
 Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-  
 16\_8j1tkrja  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 4, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB2

369      17    A 05-JUN-23            8319188      01-JUN-23      NO  
 Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-  
 SYSTEM\_FNO-17\_8c1tkril  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB3

367      18    A 05-JUN-23            8319180      01-JUN-23      NO  
 Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-  
 SYSAUX\_FNO-18\_881tkrhr  
 Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
 Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB3

371	19	A	05-JUN-23	8319197	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_8f1tkrj4						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3						
374	20	A	05-JUN-23	8319210	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_8k1tkrjb						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 5, PDB Name: DB1_PDB3						
378	21	A	05-JUN-23	8318720	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_7j1tkqk6						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
388	22	A	05-JUN-23	8318714	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_7k1tkqk6						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
384	23	A	05-JUN-23	8318717	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_7l1tkqk6						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
389	24	A	05-JUN-23	8318719	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_7m1tkqk6						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
381	25	A	05-JUN-23	8318720	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_7n1tkqrh						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1						
392	26	A	05-JUN-23	8318714	01-JUN-23	NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_7o1tkqrj						
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0						

Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB1

```
385      27      A 05-JUN-23      8318717      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
27_7p1tkqrq
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

390      28      A 05-JUN-23      8318719      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
28_7q1tkqsl
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

380      29      A 05-JUN-23      8318720      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
29_7r1tkr32
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

391      30      A 05-JUN-23      8318714      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
30_7s1tkr3a
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

382      31      A 05-JUN-23      8318717      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
31_7t1tkr3i
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

387      32      A 05-JUN-23      8318719      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
32_7ultkr42
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

383      33      A 05-JUN-23      8318719      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
33_7v1tkra6
Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN_LEVEL_0
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1_PDB1

379      34      A 05-JUN-23      8318717      01-JUN-23      NO
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
```



34\_801tkram

Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB1

386      35    A 05-JUN-23            8318714        01-JUN-23        NO  
Name: /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SOE\_FNO-  
35\_811tkrap

Tag: ORACOPYBKUPONFSXN\_LEVEL\_0  
Container ID: 3, PDB Name: DB1\_PDB1

RMAN> switch database to copy;

datafile 1 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-1\_821tkrb8"  
datafile 3 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-3\_831tkrd9"  
datafile 4 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-4\_851tkrgf"  
datafile 5 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-5\_8d1tkril"  
datafile 6 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-6\_891tkrhr"  
datafile 7 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-7\_8h1tkrj9"  
datafile 8 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-8\_8g1tkrj7"  
datafile 9 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-9\_8a1tkrhr"  
datafile 10 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-10\_861tkrgo"  
datafile 11 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-11\_841tkrf2"  
datafile 12 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-12\_8i1tkrj9"  
datafile 13 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-13\_8b1tkril"  
datafile 14 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-14\_871tkrhr"  
datafile 15 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-15\_8e1tkril"  
datafile 16 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-16\_8j1tkrja"  
datafile 17 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-17\_8c1tkril"  
datafile 18 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-18\_881tkrhr"

```
datafile 19 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_8f1tkrj4"  
datafile 20 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_8k1tkrjb"  
datafile 21 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_7j1tkqk6"  
datafile 22 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_7k1tkqk6"  
datafile 23 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_7l1tkqk6"  
datafile 24 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_7m1tkqk6"  
datafile 25 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_7n1tkqrh"  
datafile 26 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_7o1tkqrj"  
datafile 27 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_7p1tkqrq"  
datafile 28 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_7q1tkqs1"  
datafile 29 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_7r1tkr32"  
datafile 30 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_7s1tkr3a"  
datafile 31 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_7t1tkr3i"  
datafile 32 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_7u1tkr42"  
datafile 33 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_7v1tkra6"  
datafile 34 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_801tkram"  
datafile 35 switched to datafile copy "/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_811tkrap"
```

```
RMAN> run {  
2> set until sequence 204;  
3> recover database;  
4> }
```

executing command: SET until clause

Starting recover at 07-JUN-23  
using channel ORA\_DISK\_1

starting media recovery

archived log for thread 1 with sequence 190 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_190\_17vwvvt9\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 191 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_191\_17vx6vmg\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 192 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_192\_17vxctms\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 193 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_193\_17vxjjps\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 194 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_194\_17vxnxrh\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 195 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_195\_17vxswv5\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 196 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_196\_17vxylwp\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 197 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_197\_17vy3cyw\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 198 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_198\_17vy8245\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 199 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_199\_17vydv4c\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 200 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_200\_17vykf23\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 201 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_201\_17vyp1dh\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 202 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_202\_17vyvrm5\_.arc  
archived log for thread 1 with sequence 203 is already on disk as  
file  
/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_203\_17vzdfwm\_.arc  
archived log file  
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023\_06\_05/o1\_mf\_1\_190\_17vwvvt9  
\_.arc thread=1 sequence=190  
archived log file

```
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_191_17vx6vmg
_.arc thread=1 sequence=191
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_192_17vxctms
_.arc thread=1 sequence=192
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_193_17vxjjps
_.arc thread=1 sequence=193
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_194_17vxnxrh
_.arc thread=1 sequence=194
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_195_17vxswv5
_.arc thread=1 sequence=195
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_196_17vxyllwp
_.arc thread=1 sequence=196
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_197_17vy3cyw
_.arc thread=1 sequence=197
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_198_17vy8245
_.arc thread=1 sequence=198
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_199_17vydv4c
_.arc thread=1 sequence=199
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_200_17vykf23
_.arc thread=1 sequence=200
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_201_17vyp1dh
_.arc thread=1 sequence=201
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_202_17vyvrm5
_.arc thread=1 sequence=202
archived log file
name=/nfsfsxn/archlog/DB1/archivelog/2023_06_05/o1_mf_1_203_17vzdfwm
_.arc thread=1 sequence=203
media recovery complete, elapsed time: 00:19:30
Finished recover at 07-JUN-23

RMAN> exit

Recovery Manager complete.
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-124 dbs]$ sqlplus / as sysdba
```

SQL\*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed Jun 7 15:58:12 2023  
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:

Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -  
Production  
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> select member from v\$logfile;

MEMBER

-----  
-----

+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group\_3.264.1136666437  
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group\_2.263.1136666437  
+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group\_1.262.1136666437

SQL> alter database rename file  
'+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group\_1.262.1136666437' to  
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo01.log';

Database altered.

SQL> alter database rename file  
'+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group\_2.263.1136666437' to  
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo02.log';

Database altered.

SQL> alter database rename file  
'+DATA/DB1/ONLINELOG/group\_3.264.1136666437' to  
'/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo03.log';

Database altered.

SQL> alter database noarchivelog;

Database altered.

SQL> alter database open resetlogs;

Database altered.

SQL> set lin 200;

```
SQL> select name from v$datafile
2 union
3 select name from v$controlfile
4 union
5 select name from v$tempfile
6 union
7 select member from v$logfile;
```

NAME

```
-----
-----
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB864A929AEB79B9E053630F1EAC7046/datafile/o1_mf
_temp_l81bhz6g_.tmp
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/datafile/o1_mf
_temp_l81bj16t_.tmp
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/datafile/o1_mf
_temp_l81bj135_.tmp
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/datafile/o1_mf
_temp_l81bj13g_.tmp
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/datafile/o1_mf_temp_l81bhwjg_.tmp
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-21_7jltkqk6
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-22_7kltkqk6
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-23_7lltkqk6
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-24_7mltkqk6
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-25_7nltkqrh
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-26_7oltkqrj
```

NAME

```
-----
-----
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-27_7pltkqrq
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-28_7qltkqs1
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-29_7rltkr32
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-30_7sltkr3a
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-31_7tltkr3i
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-32_7ultkr42
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-33_7vltkra6
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-34_80ltkram
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-35_81ltkrap
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-10_86ltkrgo
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-14_87ltkhr
```

NAME

```
-----
-----
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-18_881tkhr
```

```

/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-3_831tkrd9
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSAUX_FNO-6_891tkrhr
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-13_8b1tkril
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-17_8c1tkril
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-1_821tkrb8
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-5_8d1tkril
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SYSTEM_FNO-9_8a1tkrhr
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-11_841tkrf2
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-15_8e1tkril
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_8f1tkrj4

```

NAME

```

-----
-----

```

```

/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-4_851tkrgf
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-UNDOTBS1_FNO-8_8g1tkrj7
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-12_8i1tkrj9
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-16_8j1tkrja
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-20_8k1tkrjb
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-7_8h1tkrj9
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/db1.ctl
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo01.log
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo02.log
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/redo03.log

```

43 rows selected.

SQL> show pdbs;

CON_ID	CON_NAME	OPEN MODE	RESTRICTED
2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	DB1_PDB1	READ WRITE	NO
4	DB1_PDB2	READ WRITE	NO
5	DB1_PDB3	READ WRITE	NO

SQL> alter session set container=db1\_pdb1;

Session altered.

SQL> select \* from test;

```

          ID DT
EVENT
-----
-----
-----

```

```

-----
1 18-MAY-23 02.35.37.000000 PM
test oracle incremental merge switch to copy
2 30-MAY-23 05.23.11.000000 PM
test recovery on a new EC2 instance host with image copy on FSxN
3 05-JUN-23 03.19.46.000000 PM
test clone on a new EC2 instance host with image copy on FSxN

SQL>

```

9. Rename the cloned database instance and change database ID with Oracle nid utility. The database instance state needs to be in mount to execute the command.

```

SQL> select name, open_mode, log_mode from v$database;

NAME          OPEN_MODE          LOG_MODE
-----
DB1           READ WRITE        NOARCHIVELOG

SQL> shutdown immediate;
Database closed.
Database dismounted.
ORACLE instance shut down.

SQL> startup mount;
ORACLE instance started.

Total System Global Area 1.0737E+10 bytes
Fixed Size                 9174800 bytes
Variable Size             1577058304 bytes
Database Buffers          9126805504 bytes
Redo Buffers              24379392 bytes
Database mounted.

SQL> exit
Disconnected from Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release
19.0.0.0.0 - Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-124 dbs]$ nid target=/ dbname=db1tst

DBNEWID: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Wed Jun 7 16:15:14 2023

Copyright (c) 1982, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights
reserved.

Connected to database DB1 (DBID=1730530050)

```



Connected to server version 19.18.0

Control Files in database:

/nfsfsxn/oracopy/db1.ctl

Change database ID and database name DB1 to DB1TST? (Y/[N]) => Y

Proceeding with operation

Changing database ID from 1730530050 to 3054879890

Changing database name from DB1 to DB1TST

Control File /nfsfsxn/oracopy/db1.ctl - modified

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-1\_821tkrb - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-3\_831tkrd - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-4\_851tkrg - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-5\_8d1tkri - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-6\_891tkrh - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-7\_8h1tkrj - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-8\_8g1tkrj - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-9\_8a1tkrh - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-10\_861tkrg - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-11\_841tkrf - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-12\_8i1tkrj - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-13\_8b1tkri - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-14\_871tkrh - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-UNDOTBS1\_FNO-15\_8e1tkri - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-USERS\_FNO-16\_8j1tkrj - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSTEM\_FNO-17\_8c1tkri - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-SYSAUX\_FNO-18\_881tkrh - dbid changed, wrote new name

Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data\_D-DB1\_I-1730530050\_TS-

```

UNDOTBS1_FNO-19_8f1tkrj - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-USERS_FNO-
20_8k1tkrj - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
21_7j1tkqk - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
22_7k1tkqk - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
23_7l1tkqk - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
24_7m1tkqk - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
25_7n1tkqr - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
26_7o1tkqr - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
27_7p1tkqr - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
28_7q1tkqs - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
29_7r1tkr3 - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
30_7s1tkr3 - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
31_7t1tkr3 - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
32_7ultkr4 - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
33_7v1tkra - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
34_801tkra - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/data_D-DB1_I-1730530050_TS-SOE_FNO-
35_811tkra - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile /nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/datafile/o1_mf_temp_l81bhwjg_.tm -
dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB864A929AEB79B9E053630F1EAC7046/datafile/o1_mf
_temp_l81bhzh6g_.tm - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB867DA8C68C816EE053630F1EAC2BCF/datafile/o1_mf
_temp_l81bj16t_.tm - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB867EA89ECF81C0E053630F1EACB901/datafile/o1_mf
_temp_l81bj135_.tm - dbid changed, wrote new name
  Datafile
/nfsfsxn/oracopy/DB1/FB867F8A4D4F821CE053630F1EAC69CC/datafile/o1_mf

```

```
_temp_l81bj13g_.tm - dbid changed, wrote new name
Control File /nfsfsxn/oracopy/db1.ctl - dbid changed, wrote new
name
Instance shut down

Database name changed to DB1TST.
Modify parameter file and generate a new password file before
restarting.
Database ID for database DB1TST changed to 3054879890.
All previous backups and archived redo logs for this database are
unusable.
Database is not aware of previous backups and archived logs in
Recovery Area.
Database has been shutdown, open database with RESETLOGS option.
Succesfully changed database name and ID.
DBNEWID - Completed succesfully.
```

10. Change Oracle database environment configuration to new database name or instance ID in oratab, init file, and create necessary admin directories that match with new instance ID. Then, start the instance with resetlogs option.

```
SQL> startup mount;
ORACLE instance started.
```

```
Total System Global Area 1.0737E+10 bytes
Fixed Size                  9174800 bytes
Variable Size               1577058304 bytes
Database Buffers           9126805504 bytes
Redo Buffers                 24379392 bytes
Database mounted.
```

```
SQL> alter database open resetlogs;
```

```
Database altered.
```

```
SQL> select name, open_mode, log_mode from v$database;
```

NAME	OPEN_MODE	LOG_MODE
DB1TST	READ WRITE	NOARCHIVELOG

```
SQL> show pdbs
```

CON_ID	CON_NAME	OPEN MODE	RESTRICTED
2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	DB1_PDB1	MOUNTED	
4	DB1_PDB2	MOUNTED	
5	DB1_PDB3	MOUNTED	

```
SQL> alter pluggable database all open;
```

```
Pluggable database altered.
```

```
SQL> show pdbs
```

CON_ID	CON_NAME	OPEN MODE	RESTRICTED
2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	DB1_PDB1	READ WRITE	NO
4	DB1_PDB2	READ WRITE	NO
5	DB1_PDB3	READ WRITE	NO

```
SQL>
```

This completes the clone of a new Oracle instance from staging database copy on FSx NFS mount for DEV, UAT, or any other use cases. Multiple Oracle instances can be cloned off the same staging image copy.



If you run into error RMAN-06571: datafile 1 does not have recoverable copy when switching the database to copy, check database incarnation that matches with primary production DB. If needed, reset the incarnation to match with primary with RMAN command `reset database to incarnation n;`

## Where to find additional information

To learn more about the information described in this document, review the following documents and/or websites:

- RMAN: Merged Incremental Backup Strategies (Doc ID 745798.1)

[https://support.oracle.com/knowledge/Oracle%20Database%20Products/745798\\_1.html](https://support.oracle.com/knowledge/Oracle%20Database%20Products/745798_1.html)

- RMAN Backup and Recovery User's Guide

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/bradv/getting-started-rman.html>

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

<https://aws.amazon.com/fsx/netapp-ontap/>

- Amazon EC2

[https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc\\_channel=ps&s\\_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef\\_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw\\_wcB:G:s&s\\_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2](https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc_channel=ps&s_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw_wcB:G:s&s_kwcid=AL!4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2)

# TR-4974: Oracle 19c in Standalone Restart on AWS FSx/EC2 with NFS/ASM

Allen Cao, Niyaz Mohamed, NetApp

## Purpose

ASM (Automatic Storage Management) is a popular Oracle storage volume manager that is employed in many Oracle installations. It is also Oracle's recommended storage management solution. It provides an alternative to conventional volume managers and file systems. Since Oracle version 11g, ASM has been packaged with grid infrastructure rather than a database. As a result, in order to utilize Oracle ASM for storage management without RAC, you must install Oracle grid infrastructure in a standalone server, also known as Oracle Restart. Doing so certainly adds more complexity in an otherwise simpler Oracle database deployment. However, as the name implies, when Oracle is deployed in Restart mode, any failed Oracle services are restarted after a host reboot without user intervention, which provides a certain degree of high availability or HA functionality.

Oracle ASM is generally deployed in FC, iSCSI storage protocols and luns as raw storage devices. However, ASM on NFS protocol and NFS file system is also supported configuration by Oracle. In this documentation, we demonstrate how to deploy an Oracle 19c database with the NFS protocol and Oracle ASM in an Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage environment with EC2 compute instances. We also demonstrate how to use the NetApp SnapCenter service through the NetApp BlueXP console to backup, restore, and clone your Oracle database for dev/test or other use cases for storage-efficient database operation in the AWS public cloud.

This solution addresses the following use cases:

- Oracle database deployment in Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage and EC2 compute instances with NFS/ASM
- Testing and validating an Oracle workload in the public AWS cloud with NFS/ASM
- Testing and validating Oracle database Restart functionalities deployed in AWS

## Audience

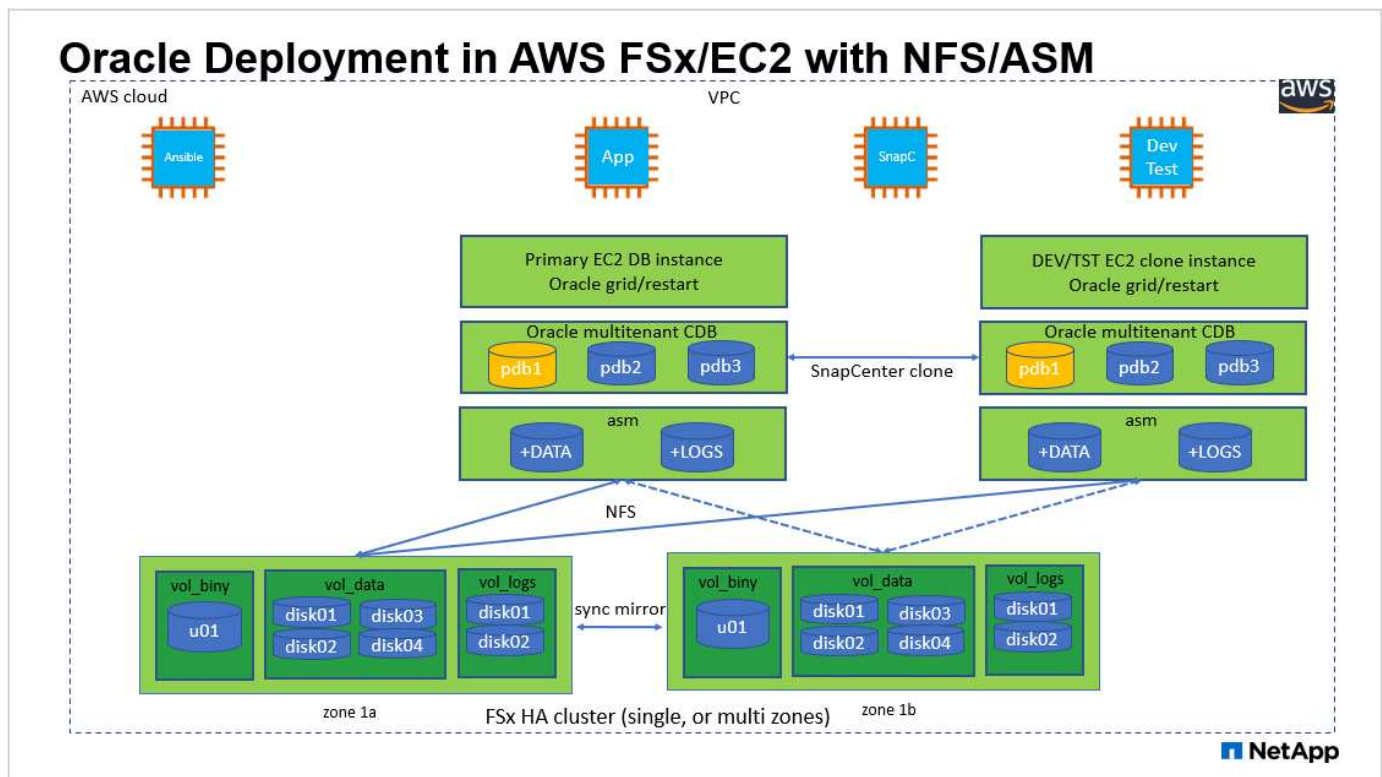
This solution is intended for the following people:

- A DBA who would like to deploy Oracle in an AWS public cloud with NFS/ASM.
- A database solution architect who would like to test Oracle workloads in the AWS public cloud.
- The storage administrator who would like to deploy and manage an Oracle database deployed to AWS FSx storage.
- The application owner who would like to stand up an Oracle database in AWS FSx/EC2.

## Solution test and validation environment

The testing and validation of this solution was performed in an AWS FSx and EC2 environment that might not match the final deployment environment. For more information, see the section [\[Key Factors for Deployment Consideration\]](#).

## Architecture



## Hardware and software components

### Hardware

FSx ONTAP storage	Current version offered by AWS	One FSx HA cluster in the same VPC and availability zone
EC2 instance for compute	t2.xlarge/4vCPU/16G	Two EC2 T2 xlarge EC2 instances, one as primary DB server and the other as a clone DB server
<b>Software</b>		
RedHat Linux	RHEL-8.6.0_HVM-20220503-x86_64-2-Hourly2-GP2	Deployed RedHat subscription for testing
Oracle Grid Infrastructure	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle Database	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle OPatch	Version 12.2.0.1.36	Latest patch p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
SnapCenter Service	Version	v2.3.1.2324

### Key factors for deployment consideration

- **EC2 compute instances.** In these tests and validations, we used an AWS EC2 t2.xlarge instance type for the Oracle database compute instance. NetApp recommends using an M5 type EC2 instance as the compute instance for Oracle in production deployment because it is optimized for database workloads. You need to size the EC2 instance appropriately for the number of vCPUs and the amount of RAM based on actual workload requirements.
- **FSx storage HA clusters single- or multi-zone deployment.** In these tests and validations, we deployed an FSx HA cluster in a single AWS availability zone. For production deployment, NetApp recommends deploying an FSx HA pair in two different availability zones. An FSx HA cluster is always provisioned in a HA pair that is sync mirrored in a pair of active-passive file systems to provide storage-level redundancy. Multi-zone deployment further enhances high availability in the event of failure in a single AWS zone.
- **FSx storage cluster sizing.** An Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage file system provides up to 160,000 raw SSD IOPS, up to 4GBps throughput, and a maximum of 192TiB capacity. However, you can size the cluster in terms of provisioned IOPS, throughput, and the storage limit (minimum 1,024 GiB) based on your actual requirements at the time of deployment. The capacity can be adjusted dynamically on the fly without affecting application availability.
- **Oracle data and logs layout.** In our tests and validations, we deployed two ASM disk groups for data and logs respectively. Within the +DATA asm disk group, we provisioned four disks in a data NFS file system mount point. Within the +LOGS asm disk group, we provisioned two disks in a logs NFS file system mount point. For large database deployment, ASM disk groups can be built to span multiple FSx file systems with ASM NFS disks distributed through multiple NFS mount points anchored on FSx file systems. This particular setup is designed to meet database throughput over 4GBps throughput and 160,000 raw SSD IOPS requirement.
- **dNFS configuration.** dNFS is built into Oracle kernel and is known to dramatically increase Oracle database performance when Oracle is deployed to NFS storage. dNFS is packaged into Oracle binary but is not turned on by default. It should be turned on for any Oracle database deployment on NFS. For multiple FSx file systems deployment for large database, dNFS multi-path should be properly configured.

- **Oracle ASM redundancy level to use for each Oracle ASM disk group that you create.** Because FSx already mirrors the storage on the FSx cluster level, you should **ONLY** use External Redundancy, which means that the option does not allow Oracle ASM to mirror the contents of the disk group. This is particularly important as NFS for Oracle database data storage requires HARD NFS mount option which is NOT desirable for mirroring ASM contents on the Oracle level.
- **Database backup.** NetApp provides a SaaS version of SnapCenter software service for database backup, restore, and clone in the cloud that is available through the NetApp BlueXP console UI. NetApp recommends implementing such a service to achieve fast (under a minute) SnapShot backup, quick (few minutes) database restore, and database cloning.

## Solution deployment

The following section provides step-by-step deployment procedures.

### Prerequisites for deployment

Deployment requires the following prerequisites.

1. An AWS account has been set up, and the necessary VPC and network segments have been created within your AWS account.
2. From the AWS EC2 console, you must deploy two EC2 Linux instances, one as the primary Oracle DB server and an optional alternative clone target DB server. See the architecture diagram in the previous section for more details about the environment setup. Also review the [User Guide for Linux instances](#) for more information.
3. From the AWS EC2 console, deploy Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage HA clusters to host the Oracle database volumes. If you are not familiar with the deployment of FSx storage, see the documentation [Creating FSx for ONTAP file systems](#) for step-by-step instructions.
4. Steps 2 and 3 can be performed using the following Terraform automation toolkit, which creates an EC2 instance named `ora_01` and an FSx file system named `fsx_01`. Review the instruction carefully and change the variables to suit your environment before execution.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-  
Automation/na_aws_fsx_ec2_deploy.git
```



Ensure that you have allocated at least 50G in EC2 instance root volume in order to have sufficient space to stage Oracle installation files.

### EC2 instance kernel configuration



With the prerequisites provisioned, log into the EC2 instance as `ec2-user` and `sudo` to root user to configure the Linux kernel for Oracle installation.

1. Create a staging directory `/tmp/archive` folder and set the `777` permission.

```
mkdir /tmp/archive  
  
chmod 777 /tmp/archive
```

2. Download and stage the Oracle binary installation files and other required rpm files to the `/tmp/archive` directory.

See the following list of installation files to be staged in `/tmp/archive` on the EC2 instance.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ ls -l /tmp/archive  
total 10537316  
-rw-rw-r--. 1 ec2-user ec2-user      19112 Mar 21 15:57 compat-  
libcap1-1.10-7.el7.x86_64.rpm  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 3059705302 Mar 21 22:01  
LINUX.X64_193000_db_home.zip  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 2889184573 Mar 21 21:09  
LINUX.X64_193000_grid_home.zip  
-rw-rw-r--. 1 ec2-user ec2-user      589145 Mar 21 15:56  
netapp_linux_unified_host_utilities-7-1.x86_64.rpm  
-rw-rw-r--. 1 ec2-user ec2-user      31828 Mar 21 15:55 oracle-  
database-preinstall-19c-1.0-2.el8.x86_64.rpm  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 2872741741 Mar 21 22:31  
p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 1843577895 Mar 21 22:32  
p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user  124347218 Mar 21 22:33  
p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip  
-rw-r--r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user    257136 Mar 22 16:25  
policycoreutils-python-utils-2.9-9.el8.noarch.rpm
```

3. Install Oracle 19c preinstall RPM, which satisfies most kernel configuration requirements.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/oracle-database-preinstall-19c-1.0-  
2.el8.x86_64.rpm
```

4. Download and install the missing `compat-libcap1` in Linux 8.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/compat-libcap1-1.10-7.el7.x86_64.rpm
```

5. From NetApp, download and install NetApp host utilities.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/netapp_linux_unified_host_utilities-7-1.x86_64.rpm
```

6. Install `policycoreutils-python-utils`, which is not available in the EC2 instance.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/policycoreutils-python-utils-2.9-9.el8.noarch.rpm
```

7. Install open JDK version 1.8.

```
yum install java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64
```

8. Install `nfs-utils`.

```
yum install nfs-utils
```

9. Disable transparent hugepages in the current system.

```
echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled  
echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag
```

Add the following lines in `/etc/rc.local` to disable `transparent_hugepage` after reboot:

```
# Disable transparent hugepages  
    if test -f /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled;  
then  
    echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled  
    fi  
    if test -f /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag;  
then  
    echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag  
    fi
```

10. Disable selinux by changing `SELINUX=enforcing` to `SELINUX=disabled`. You must reboot the host to make the change effective.

```
vi /etc/sysconfig/selinux
```

11. Add the following lines to `limit.conf` to set the file descriptor limit and stack size without quotes "`"`.

```
vi /etc/security/limits.conf
**          hard    nofile      65536"
**          soft    stack       10240"
```

12. Add swap space to EC2 instance by following this instruction: [How do I allocate memory to work as swap space in an Amazon EC2 instance by using a swap file?](#) The exact amount of space to add depends on the size of RAM up to 16G.
13. Add the ASM group to be used for the asm sysasm group

```
groupadd asm
```

14. Modify the oracle user to add ASM as a secondary group (the oracle user should have been created after Oracle preinstall RPM installation).

```
usermod -a -G asm oracle
```

15. Reboot the EC2 instance.

## Provision and export NFS volumes to be mounted to EC2 instance host

Provision three volumes from the command line by login to FSx cluster via ssh as fsxadmin user with FSx cluster management IP to host the Oracle database binary, data, and logs files.

1. Log into the FSx cluster through SSH as the fsxadmin user.

```
ssh fsxadmin@172.30.15.53
```

2. Execute the following command to create a volume for the Oracle binary.

```
vol create -volume ora_01_biny -aggregate aggr1 -size 50G -state  
online -type RW -junction-path /ora_01_biny -snapshot-policy none  
-tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

3. Execute the following command to create a volume for Oracle data.

```
vol create -volume ora_01_data -aggregate aggr1 -size 100G -state  
online -type RW -junction-path /ora_01_data -snapshot-policy none  
-tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

4. Execute the following command to create a volume for Oracle logs.

```
vol create -volume ora_01_logs -aggregate aggr1 -size 100G -state  
online -type RW -junction-path /ora_01_logs -snapshot-policy none  
-tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

5. Validate the DB volumes created.

```
vol show
```

This is expected to return:

```

FsxId02ad7bf3476b741df::> vol show
(vol show)
FsxId06c3c8b2a7bd56458::> vol show
Vserver    Volume          Aggregate    State      Type      Size
Available Used%
-----
svm_ora    ora_01_biny     aggr1       online    RW        50GB
47.50GB    0%
svm_ora    ora_01_data     aggr1       online    RW        100GB
95.00GB    0%
svm_ora    ora_01_logs     aggr1       online    RW        100GB
95.00GB    0%
svm_ora    svm_ora_root    aggr1       online    RW        1GB
972.1MB    0%
4 entries were displayed.

```

### Database storage configuration

Now, import and set up the FSx storage for the Oracle grid infrastructure and database installation on the EC2 instance host.

1. Log into the EC2 instance via SSH as the ec2-user with your SSH key and EC2 instance IP address.

```
ssh -i ora_01.pem ec2-user@172.30.15.58
```

2. Create /u01 directory to mount Oracle binary file system

```
sudo mkdir /u01
```

3. Mount the binary volume to /u01, changed to your FSx NFS lif IP address. If you deployed FSx cluster via NetApp automation toolkit, FSx virtual storage server NFS lif IP address will be listed in the output at the end of resources provision execution. Otherwise, it can be retrieved from AWS FSx console UI.

```
sudo mount -t nfs 172.30.15.19:/ora_01_biny /u01 -o  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsize=65536,wsiz=65536
```

4. Change /u01 mount point ownership to the Oracle user and it's associated primary group.

```
sudo chown oracle:oinstall /u01
```

5. Create /oradata directory to mount Oracle data file system

```
sudo mkdir /oradata
```

6. Mount the data volume to /oradata, changed to your FSx NFS lif IP address

```
sudo mount -t nfs 172.30.15.19:/ora_01_data /oradata -o  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsize=65536,wsiz=65536
```

7. Change /oradata mount point ownership to the Oracle user and it's associated primary group.

```
sudo chown oracle:oinstall /oradata
```

8. Create /orlogs directory to mount Oracle logs file system

```
sudo mkdir /orlogs
```

9. Mount the log volume to /oratalogs, changed to your FSx NFS lif IP address

```
sudo mount -t nfs 172.30.15.19:/ora_01_logs /oratalogs -o  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsz=65536,wsz=65536
```

10. Change /oratalogs mount point ownership to the Oracle user and it's associated primary group.

```
sudo chown oracle:oinstall /oratalogs
```

11. Add a mount point to /etc/fstab.

```
sudo vi /etc/fstab
```

Add the following line.

```
172.30.15.19:/ora_01_biny      /u01      nfs  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsz=65536,wsz=65536  0  
0  
172.30.15.19:/ora_01_data    /oradata  nfs  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsz=65536,wsz=65536  0  
0  
172.30.15.19:/ora_01_logs    /oratalogs nfs  
rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsz=65536,wsz=65536  0  
0
```

12. sudo to oracle user, create asm folders to store asm disk files

```
sudo su  
su - oracle  
mkdir /oradata/asm  
mkdir /oratalogs/asm
```

13. As the oracle user, create asm data disk files, change the count to match to the disk size with block size.

```
dd if=/dev/zero of=/oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk01 bs=1M count=20480
oflag=direct
dd if=/dev/zero of=/oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk02 bs=1M count=20480
oflag=direct
dd if=/dev/zero of=/oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk03 bs=1M count=20480
oflag=direct
dd if=/dev/zero of=/oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk04 bs=1M count=20480
oflag=direct
```

14. As the root user, change data disk file permission to 640

```
chmod 640 /oradata/asm/*
```

15. AS the oracle user, create asm logs disk files, change to count to match to the disk size with block size.

```
dd if=/dev/zero of=/oralogs/asm/nfs_logs_disk01 bs=1M count=40960
oflag=direct
dd if=/dev/zero of=/oralogs/asm/nfs_logs_disk02 bs=1M count=40960
oflag=direct
```

16. As the root user, change logs disk file permission to 640

```
chmod 640 /oralogs/asm/*
```

17. Reboot the EC2 instance host.

## Oracle grid infrastructure installation



1. Log into the EC2 instance as the ec2-user via SSH and enable password authentication by uncommenting `PasswordAuthentication yes` and then commenting out `PasswordAuthentication no`.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

2. Restart the sshd service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd
```

3. Reset the Oracle user password.

```
sudo passwd oracle
```

4. Log in as the Oracle Restart software owner user (oracle). Create an Oracle directory as follows:

```
mkdir -p /u01/app/oracle  
mkdir -p /u01/app/oraInventory
```

5. Change the directory permission setting.

```
chmod -R 775 /u01/app
```

6. Create a grid home directory and change to it.

```
mkdir -p /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid  
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid
```

7. Unzip the grid installation files.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/LINUX.X64_193000_grid_home.zip
```

8. From grid home, delete the OPatch directory.

```
rm -rf OPatch
```

9. From grid home, copy `p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip` to the `grid_home`, and then unzip it.

```
cp /tmp/archive/p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip .
unzip p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

10. From grid home, revise `cv/admin/cvu_config`, uncomment and replace `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OEL5` with `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OL7`.

```
vi cv/admin/cvu_config
```

11. Prepare a `gridsetup.rsp` file for silent installation and place the `rsp` file in the `/tmp/archive` directory. The `rsp` file should cover sections A, B, and G with the following information:

```
INVENTORY_LOCATION=/u01/app/oraInventory
oracle.install.option=HA_CONFIG
ORACLE_BASE=/u01/app/oracle
oracle.install.asm.OSDBA=dba
oracle.install.asm.OSOPER=oper
oracle.install.asm.OSASM=asm
oracle.install.asm.SYSASMPassword="SetPWD"
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.name=DATA
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.redundancy=EXTERNAL
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.AUSize=4
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.disks=/oradata/asm/*,/orlogs/asm/*
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.diskDiscoveryString=/oradata/asm/nfs_data_
data_disk01,/oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk02,/oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk03,
/oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk04
oracle.install.asm.monitorPassword="SetPWD"
oracle.install.asm.configureAFD=false
```

12. Log into the EC2 instance as the root user.

13. Install `cvuqdisk-1.0.10-1.rpm`.

```
rpm -ivh /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/cv/rpm/cvuqdisk-1.0.10-
1.rpm
```

14. Log into the EC2 instance as the Oracle user and extract the patch in the `/tmp/archive` folder.

```
unzip p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

15. From grid home `/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid` and as the oracle user, launch `gridSetup.sh` for grid infrastructure installation.

```
./gridSetup.sh -applyRU /tmp/archive/34762026/ -silent  
-responseFile /tmp/archive/gridsetup.rsp
```

Ignore the warnings about wrong groups for grid infrastructure. We are using a single Oracle user to manage Oracle Restart, so this is expected.

16. As root user, execute the following script(s):

```
/u01/app/oraInventory/orainstRoot.sh  
  
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/root.sh
```

17. As the Oracle user, execute the following command to complete the configuration:

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/gridSetup.sh -executeConfigTools  
-responseFile /tmp/archive/gridsetup.rsp -silent
```

18. As the Oracle user, create the LOGS disk group.

```
bin/asmca -silent -sysAsmPassword 'yourPWD' -asmsnmpPassword  
'yourPWD' -createDiskGroup -diskGroupName LOGS -disk  
'/oralogs/asm/nfs_logs_disk*' -redundancy EXTERNAL -au_size 4
```

19. As the Oracle user, validate grid services after installation configuration.

```

bin/crsctl stat res -t
+
Name                Target  State      Server
State details
Local Resources
ora.DATA.dg         ONLINE ONLINE     ip-172-30-15-58
STABLE
ora.LISTENER.lsnr   ONLINE ONLINE     ip-172-30-15-58
STABLE
ora.LOGS.dg         ONLINE ONLINE     ip-172-30-15-58
STABLE
ora.asm             ONLINE ONLINE     ip-172-30-15-58
Started,STABLE
ora.ons             OFFLINE OFFLINE    ip-172-30-15-58
STABLE
Cluster Resources
ora.cssd            ONLINE ONLINE     ip-172-30-15-58
STABLE
ora.diskmon         OFFLINE OFFLINE
STABLE
ora.driver.afd      ONLINE ONLINE     ip-172-30-15-58
STABLE
ora.evmd            ONLINE ONLINE     ip-172-30-15-58
STABLE

```

## Oracle database installation

1. Log in as the Oracle user and unset `$ORACLE_HOME` and `$ORACLE_SID` if it is set.

```
unset ORACLE_HOME
unset ORACLE_SID
```

2. Create the Oracle DB home directory and change to it.

```
mkdir /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
```

3. Unzip the Oracle DB installation files.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/LINUX.X64_193000_db_home.zip
```

4. From the DB home, delete the OPatch directory.

```
rm -rf OPatch
```

5. From DB home, copy `p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip` to `grid_home`, and then unzip it.

```
cp /tmp/archive/p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip .
unzip p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

6. From DB home, revise `cv/admin/cvu_config`, and uncomment and replace `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OEL5` with `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OL7`.

```
vi cv/admin/cvu_config
```

7. From the `/tmp/archive` directory, unpack the DB 19.18 RU patch.

```
unzip p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

8. Prepare the DB silent install `rsp` file in `/tmp/archive/dbinstall.rsp` directory with the following values:

```
oracle.install.option=INSTALL_DB_SWONLY
UNIX_GROUP_NAME=oinstall
INVENTORY_LOCATION=/u01/app/oraInventory
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
ORACLE_BASE=/u01/app/oracle
oracle.install.db.InstallEdition=EE
oracle.install.db.OSDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSOPER_GROUP=oper
oracle.install.db.OSBACKUPDBA_GROUP=oper
oracle.install.db.OSDGDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSKMDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSRACDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.rootconfig.executeRootScript=false
```

9. From db1 home /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1, execute silent software-only DB installation.

```
./runInstaller -applyRU /tmp/archive/34765931/ -silent
-ignorePrereqFailure -responseFile /tmp/archive/dbinstall.rsp
```

10. As root user, run the `root.sh` script after software-only installation.

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1/root.sh
```

11. As Oracle user, create the `dbca.rsp` file with the following entries:

```
gdbName=db1.demo.netapp.com
sid=db1
createAsContainerDatabase=true
numberOfPDBs=3
pdbName=db1_pdb
useLocalUndoForPDBs=true
pdbAdminPassword="yourPWD"
templateName=General_Purpose.dbc
sysPassword="yourPWD"
systemPassword="yourPWD"
dbsnmpPassword="yourPWD"
storageType=ASM
diskGroupName=DATA
characterSet=AL32UTF8
nationalCharacterSet=AL16UTF16
listeners=LISTENER
databaseType=MULTIPURPOSE
automaticMemoryManagement=false
totalMemory=8192
```



Set the total memory based on available memory in EC2 instance host. Oracle allocates 75% of `totalMemory` to DB instance SGA or buffer cache.

12. As Oracle user, launch DB creation with dbca.

```
bin/dbca -silent -createDatabase -responseFile /tmp/archive/dbca.rsp
```

output:

Prepare for db operation

7% complete

Registering database with Oracle Restart

11% complete

Copying database files

33% complete

Creating and starting Oracle instance

35% complete

38% complete

42% complete

45% complete

48% complete

Completing Database Creation

53% complete

55% complete

56% complete

Creating Pluggable Databases

60% complete

64% complete

69% complete

78% complete

Executing Post Configuration Actions

100% complete

Database creation complete. For details check the logfiles at:

/u01/app/oracle/cfgtoollogs/dbca/db1.

Database Information:

Global Database Name:db1.demo.netapp.com

System Identifier(SID):db1

Look at the log file "/u01/app/oracle/cfgtoollogs/dbca/db1/db1.log"  
for further details.

13. As Oracle user, validate Oracle Restart HA services after DB creation.



```

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 db1]$ ../grid/bin/crsctl stat res -t
-----
-----
Name          Target  State          Server          State
details
-----
-----
Local Resources
-----
-----
ora.DATA.dg
          ONLINE  ONLINE         ip-172-30-15-58    STABLE
ora.LISTENER.lsnr
          ONLINE  ONLINE         ip-172-30-15-58    STABLE
ora.LOGS.dg
          ONLINE  ONLINE         ip-172-30-15-58    STABLE
ora.asm
          ONLINE  ONLINE         ip-172-30-15-58
Started,STABLE
ora.ons
          OFFLINE OFFLINE        ip-172-30-15-58    STABLE
-----
-----
Cluster Resources
-----
-----
ora.cssd
   1      ONLINE  ONLINE         ip-172-30-15-58    STABLE
ora.dbf.db
   1      ONLINE  ONLINE         ip-172-30-15-58
Open,HOME=/u01/app/o
racle/product/19.0.0
/db1,STABLE
ora.diskmon
   1      OFFLINE OFFLINE        STABLE
ora.evmd
   1      ONLINE  ONLINE         ip-172-30-15-58    STABLE
-----
-----
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 db1]$

```

14. Set the Oracle user `.bash_profile`.

```
vi ~/.bash_profile
```

15. Add following entries:

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
export ORACLE_SID=db1
export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin
alias asm='export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid;export
ORACLE_SID=+ASM;export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin'
```

16. Validate the CDB/PDB created.

```
. ~/.bash_profile

sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;

NAME          OPEN_MODE

DB1           READ WRITE

SQL> select name from v$datafile;

NAME

+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/system.256.1132176177
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/sysaux.257.1132176221
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/undotbs1.258.1132176247
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/system.265.11321
77009
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/sysaux.266.11321
77009
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/users.259.1132176247
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/undotbs1.267.113
2177009
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/system.271.11321
77853
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/sysaux.272.11321
77853
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/undotbs1.270.113
2177853
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/users.274.113217
```

```
7871
```

```
NAME
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/system.276.11321
77871
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/sysaux.277.11321
77871
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/undotbs1.275.113
2177871
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/users.279.113217
7889
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/system.281.11321
77889
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/sysaux.282.11321
77889
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/undotbs1.280.113
2177889
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/users.284.113217
7907
```

```
19 rows selected.
```

```
SQL> show pdbs
```

CON_ID	CON_NAME	OPEN MODE	RESTRICTED
2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	DB1_PDB1	READ WRITE	NO
4	DB1_PDB2	READ WRITE	NO
5	DB1_PDB3	READ WRITE	NO

```
SQL>
```

17. As oracle user, change to Oracle database home directory /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1 and Enable dNFS

```
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1

mkdir rdbms/lib/odm

cp lib/libnfsodm19.so rdbms/lib/odm/
```

18. Configure oranfstab file in ORACLE\_HOME

```
vi $ORACLE_HOME/dbs/oranfstab

add following entries:

server: fsx_01
local: 172.30.15.58 path: 172.30.15.19
nfs_version: nfsv3
export: /ora_01_biny mount: /u01
export: /ora_01_data mount: /oradata
export: /ora_01_logs mount: /orals
```

19. As oracle user, login to database from sqlplus and set the DB recovery size and location to the +LOGS disk group.

```
. ~/.bash_profile

sqlplus / as sysdba

alter system set db_recovery_file_dest_size = 80G scope=both;

alter system set db_recovery_file_dest = '+LOGS' scope=both;
```

20. Enable archive log mode and reboot Oracle DB instance

```
shutdown immediate;

startup mount;

alter database archivelog;

alter database open;

alter system switch logfile;
```

21. Validate DB log mode and dNFS after instance reboot

```
SQL> select name, log_mode from v$database;
```

```
NAME          LOG_MODE
-----
DB1           ARCHIVELOG
```

```
SQL> select svrname, dirname from v$dnfs_servers;
```

```
SVRNAME
-----
-----
DIRNAME
-----
-----
fsx_01
/ora_01_data

fsx_01
/ora_01_biny

fsx_01
/ora_01_logs
```

## 22. Validate Oracle ASM

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 db1]$ asm
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 db1]$ sqlplus / as sysasm

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Tue May 9 20:39:39 2023
Version 19.18.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2022, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 -
Production
Version 19.18.0.0.0

SQL> set lin 200
SQL> col path form a30
SQL> select name, path, header_status, mount_status, state from
v$asm_disk;
```

```
NAME          PATH
```

```

HEADER_STATU MOUNT_S STATE
-----
-----
DATA_0002          /oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk01  MEMBER
  CACHED  NORMAL
DATA_0000          /oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk02  MEMBER
  CACHED  NORMAL
DATA_0001          /oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk03  MEMBER
  CACHED  NORMAL
DATA_0003          /oradata/asm/nfs_data_disk04  MEMBER
  CACHED  NORMAL
LOGS_0000          /orlogs/asm/nfs_logs_disk01   MEMBER
  CACHED  NORMAL
LOGS_0001          /orlogs/asm/nfs_logs_disk02   MEMBER
  CACHED  NORMAL

```

6 rows selected.

```

SQL> select name, state, ALLOCATION_UNIT_SIZE, TOTAL_MB, FREE_MB
from v$asm_diskgroup;

```

```

NAME                STATE           ALLOCATION_UNIT_SIZE
TOTAL_MB    FREE_MB
-----
DATA                MOUNTED                4194304
81920          73536
LOGS                MOUNTED                4194304
81920          81640

```

This completes Oracle 19c version 19.18 Restart deployment on an Amazon FSx for ONTAP and EC2 compute instance with NFS/ASM. If desired, NetApp recommends relocating the Oracle control file and online log files to the +LOGS disk group.

### Automated deployment option

NetApp will release a fully automated solution deployment toolkit with Ansible to facilitate the implementation of this solution. Please check back for the availability of the toolkit. After it is released, a link will be posted here.

### Oracle Database backup, restore, and clone with SnapCenter Service

At this moment, Oracle database with NFS and ASM storage option is only supported by traditional SnapCenter Server UI tool See [Hybrid Cloud Database Solutions with SnapCenter](#) for details on Oracle database backup, restore, and clone with NetApp SnapCenter UI tool.

## Where to find additional information

To learn more about the information described in this document, review the following documents and/or websites:

- Installing Oracle Grid Infrastructure for a Standalone Server with a New Database Installation

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-oracle-grid-infrastructure-for-a-standalone-server-with-a-new-database-installation.html#GUID-0B1CEE8C-C893-46AA-8A6A-7B5FAAEC72B3>

- Installing and Configuring Oracle Database Using Response Files

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-and-configuring-oracle-database-using-response-files.html#GUID-D53355E9-E901-4224-9A2A-B882070EDDF7>

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

<https://aws.amazon.com/fsx/netapp-ontap/>

- Amazon EC2

[https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc\\_channel=ps&s\\_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef\\_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw\\_wcB:G:s&s\\_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2](https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc_channel=ps&s_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw_wcB:G:s&s_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2)

## TR-4965: Oracle Database Deployment and Protection in AWS FSx/EC2 with iSCSI/ASM

Allen Cao, Niyaz Mohamed, NetApp

### Purpose

ASM (Automatic Storage Management) is a popular Oracle storage volume manager employed in many Oracle installations. It is also Oracle's recommended storage management solution. It provides an alternative to conventional volume managers and file systems. Since Oracle version 11g, ASM packaged with grid infrastructure rather than a database. As a result, in order to utilize Oracle ASM for storage management without RAC, you must install Oracle grid infrastructure in a standalone server, also known as Oracle Restart. Doing so certainly adds more complexity in Oracle database deployment. However, as the name implies, when Oracle deployed in Restart mode, failed Oracle services restarted automatically by grid infrastructure or after a host reboot without user intervention, which provides a certain degree of high availability or HA functionality.

In this documentation, we demonstrate how to deploy an Oracle database with the iSCSI protocol and Oracle ASM in an Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage environment with EC2 compute instances. We also demonstrate how to use the NetApp SnapCenter service through the NetApp BlueXP console to backup, restore, and clone your Oracle database for dev/test or other use cases for storage-efficient database operation in the AWS public cloud.

This solution addresses the following use cases:

- Oracle database deployment in Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage and EC2 compute instances with iSCSI/ASM

- Testing and validating an Oracle workload in the public AWS cloud with iSCSI/ASM
- Testing and validating Oracle database Restart functionalities deployed in AWS

## Audience

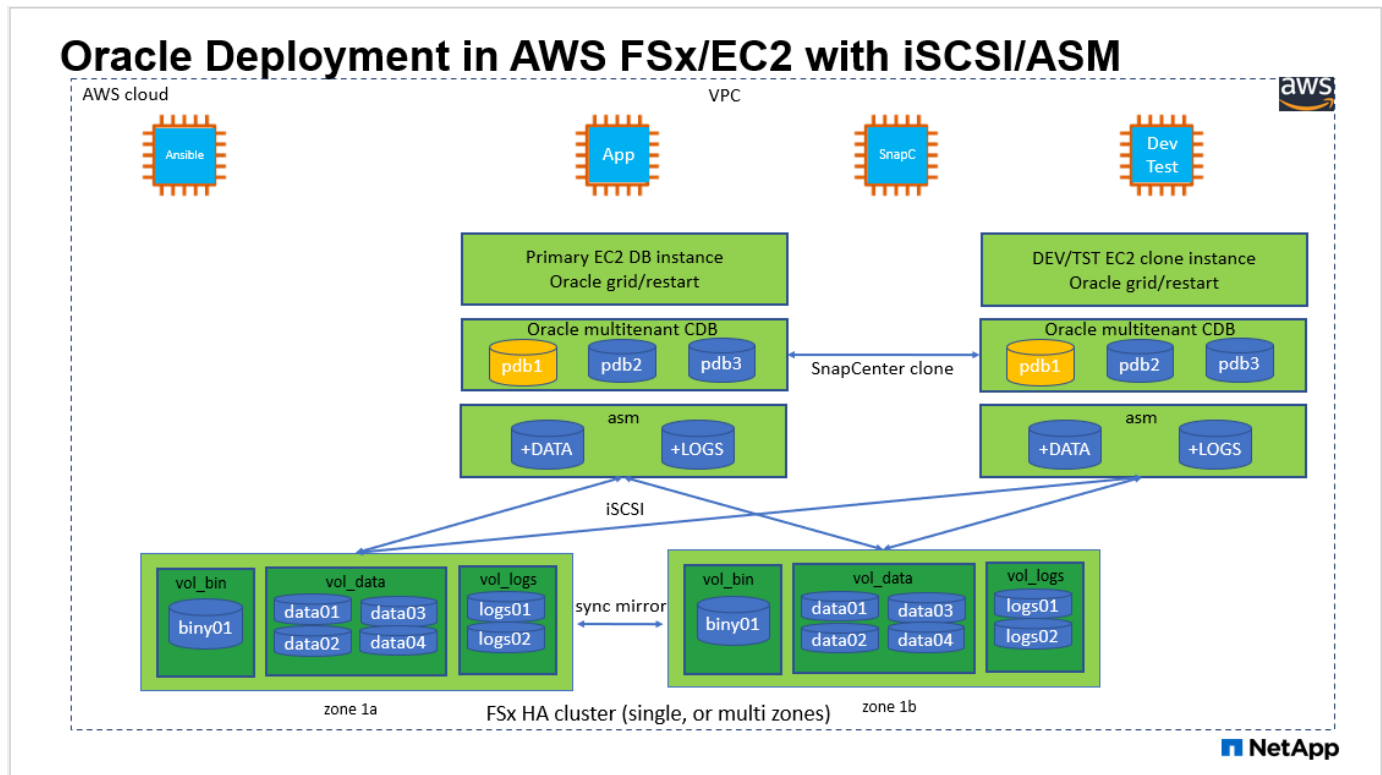
This solution is intended for the following people:

- A DBA who would like to deploy Oracle in an AWS public cloud with iSCSI/ASM.
- A database solution architect who would like to test Oracle workloads in the AWS public cloud.
- The storage administrator who would like to deploy and manage an Oracle database deployed to AWS FSx storage.
- The application owner who would like to stand up an Oracle database in AWS FSx/EC2.

## Solution test and validation environment

The testing and validation of this solution was performed in an AWS FSx and EC2 environment that might not match the final deployment environment. For more information, see the section [\[Key Factors for Deployment Consideration\]](#).

## Architecture



## Hardware and software components

### Hardware

FSx ONTAP storage	Current version offered by AWS	One FSx HA cluster in the same VPC and availability zone
-------------------	--------------------------------	--



EC2 instance for compute	t2.xlarge/4vCPU/16G	Two EC2 T2 xlarge EC2 instances, one as primary DB server and the other as a clone DB server
<b>Software</b>		
RedHat Linux	RHEL-8.6.0_HVM-20220503-x86_64-2-Hourly2-GP2	Deployed RedHat subscription for testing
Oracle Grid Infrastructure	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle Database	Version 19.18	Applied RU patch p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
Oracle OPatch	Version 12.2.0.1.36	Latest patch p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
SnapCenter Service	Version	v2.3.1.2324

### Key factors for deployment consideration

- **EC2 compute instances.** In these tests and validations, we used an AWS EC2 t2.xlarge instance type for the Oracle database compute instance. NetApp recommends using an M5 type EC2 instance as the compute instance for Oracle in production deployment because it is optimized for database workloads. You need to size the EC2 instance appropriately for the number of vCPUs and the amount of RAM based on actual workload requirements.
- **FSx storage HA clusters single- or multi-zone deployment.** In these tests and validations, we deployed an FSx HA cluster in a single AWS availability zone. For production deployment, NetApp recommends deploying an FSx HA pair in two different availability zones. An FSx HA cluster is always provisioned in a HA pair that is sync mirrored in a pair of active-passive file systems to provide storage-level redundancy. Multi-zone deployment further enhances high availability in the event of failure in a single AWS zone.
- **FSx storage cluster sizing.** An Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage file system provides up to 160,000 raw SSD IOPS, up to 4GBps throughput, and a maximum of 192TiB capacity. However, you can size the cluster in terms of provisioned IOPS, throughput, and the storage limit (minimum 1,024 GiB) based on your actual requirements at the time of deployment. The capacity can be adjusted dynamically on the fly without affecting application availability.
- **Oracle data and logs layout.** In our tests and validations, we deployed two ASM disk groups for data and logs respectively. Within the +DATA asm disk group, we provisioned four LUNs in a data volume. Within the +LOGS asm disk group, we provisioned two LUNs in a logs volume. In general, multiple LUNs laid out within an Amazon FSx for ONTAP volume provides better performance.
- **iSCSI configuration.** The EC2 instance database server connects to FSx storage with the iSCSI protocol. EC2 instances generally deploy with a single network interface or ENI. The single NIC interface carries both iSCSI and application traffic. It is important to gauge the Oracle database peak I/O throughput requirement by carefully analyzing the Oracle AWR report in order to choose a right EC2 compute instance that meets both application and iSCSI traffic-throughput requirements. NetApp also recommends allocating four iSCSI connections to both FSx iSCSI endpoints with multipath properly configured.
- **Oracle ASM redundancy level to use for each Oracle ASM disk group that you create.** Because FSx already mirrors the storage on the FSx cluster level, you should use External Redundancy, which means that the option does not allow Oracle ASM to mirror the contents of the disk group.

- **Database backup.** NetApp provides a SaaS version of SnapCenter software service for database backup, restore, and clone in the cloud that is available through the NetApp BlueXP console UI. NetApp recommends implementing such a service to achieve fast (under a minute) SnapShot backup, quick (few minutes) database restore, and database cloning.

## Solution deployment

The following section provides step-by-step deployment procedures.

### Prerequisites for deployment

Deployment requires the following prerequisites.

1. An AWS account has been set up, and the necessary VPC and network segments have been created within your AWS account.
2. From the AWS EC2 console, you must deploy two EC2 Linux instances, one as the primary Oracle DB server and an optional alternative clone target DB server. See the architecture diagram in the previous section for more details about the environment setup. Also review the [User Guide for Linux instances](#) for more information.
3. From the AWS EC2 console, deploy Amazon FSx for ONTAP storage HA clusters to host the Oracle database volumes. If you are not familiar with the deployment of FSx storage, see the documentation [Creating FSx for ONTAP file systems](#) for step-by-step instructions.
4. Steps 2 and 3 can be performed using the following Terraform automation toolkit, which creates an EC2 instance named `ora_01` and an FSx file system named `fsx_01`. Review the instruction carefully and change the variables to suit your environment before execution.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-  
Automation/na_aws_fsx_ec2_deploy.git
```



Ensure that you have allocated at least 50G in EC2 instance root volume in order to have sufficient space to stage Oracle installation files.

### EC2 instance kernel configuration

With the prerequisites provisioned, log into the EC2 instance as `ec2-user` and `sudo` to root user to configure the Linux kernel for Oracle installation.

1. Create a staging directory `/tmp/archive` folder and set the `777` permission.

```
mkdir /tmp/archive  
  
chmod 777 /tmp/archive
```

2. Download and stage the Oracle binary installation files and other required rpm files to the `/tmp/archive` directory.

See the following list of installation files to be staged in `/tmp/archive` on the EC2 instance.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ ls -l /tmp/archive  
total 10537316  
-rw-rw-r--. 1 ec2-user ec2-user      19112 Mar 21 15:57 compat-  
libcap1-1.10-7.el7.x86_64.rpm  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 3059705302 Mar 21 22:01  
LINUX.X64_193000_db_home.zip  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 2889184573 Mar 21 21:09  
LINUX.X64_193000_grid_home.zip  
-rw-rw-r--. 1 ec2-user ec2-user      589145 Mar 21 15:56  
netapp_linux_unified_host_utilities-7-1.x86_64.rpm  
-rw-rw-r--. 1 ec2-user ec2-user      31828 Mar 21 15:55 oracle-  
database-preinstall-19c-1.0-2.el8.x86_64.rpm  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 2872741741 Mar 21 22:31  
p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user 1843577895 Mar 21 22:32  
p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip  
-rw-rw-r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user  124347218 Mar 21 22:33  
p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip  
-rw-r--r--  1 ec2-user ec2-user    257136 Mar 22 16:25  
policycoreutils-python-utils-2.9-9.el8.noarch.rpm
```

3. Install Oracle 19c preinstall RPM, which satisfies most kernel configuration requirements.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/oracle-database-preinstall-19c-1.0-  
2.el8.x86_64.rpm
```

4. Download and install the missing `compat-libcap1` in Linux 8.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/compat-libcap1-1.10-7.el7.x86_64.rpm
```

5. From NetApp, download and install NetApp host utilities.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/netapp_linux_unified_host_utilities-7-1.x86_64.rpm
```

6. Install `policycoreutils-python-utils`, which is not available in the EC2 instance.

```
yum install /tmp/archive/policycoreutils-python-utils-2.9-9.el8.noarch.rpm
```

7. Install open JDK version 1.8.

```
yum install java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64
```

8. Install iSCSI initiator utils.

```
yum install iscsi-initiator-utils
```

9. Install `sg3_utils`.

```
yum install sg3_utils
```

10. Install `device-mapper-multipath`.

```
yum install device-mapper-multipath
```

11. Disable transparent hugepages in the current system.

```
echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled  
echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag
```

Add the following lines in `/etc/rc.local` to disable `transparent_hugepage` after reboot:

```
# Disable transparent hugepages
    if test -f /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled;
then
    echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled
fi
    if test -f /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag;
then
    echo never > /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag
fi
```

12. Disable selinux by changing SELINUX=enforcing to SELINUX=disabled. You must reboot the host to make the change effective.

```
vi /etc/sysconfig/selinux
```

13. Add the following lines to `limit.conf` to set the file descriptor limit and stack size without quotes "`"`.

```
vi /etc/security/limits.conf
**          hard    nofile      65536"
**          soft    stack       10240"
```

14. Add swap space to EC2 instance by following this instruction: [How do I allocate memory to work as swap space in an Amazon EC2 instance by using a swap file?](#) The exact amount of space to add depends on the size of RAM up to 16G.
15. Change `node.session.timeo.replacement_timeout` in the `iscsi.conf` configuration file from 120 to 5 seconds.

```
vi /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf
```

16. Enable and start the iSCSI service on the EC2 instance.

```
systemctl enable iscsid
systemctl start iscsid
```

17. Retrieve the iSCSI initiator address to be used for database LUN mapping.

```
cat /etc/iscsi/initiatorname.iscsi
```

18. Add the ASM group to be used for the asm sysasm group.

```
groupadd asm
```

19. Modify the oracle user to add ASM as a secondary group (the oracle user should have been created after Oracle preinstall RPM installation).

```
usermod -a -G asm oracle
```

20. Stop and disable Linux firewall if it is active.

```
systemctl stop firewalld  
systemctl disable firewalld
```

21. Reboot the EC2 instance.

## **Provision and map database volumes and LUNs to the EC2 instance host**

Provision three volumes from the command line by login to FSx cluster via ssh as fsxadmin user with FSx cluster management IP to host the Oracle database binary, data, and logs files.

1. Log into the FSx cluster through SSH as the fsxadmin user.

```
ssh fsxadmin@172.30.15.53
```

2. Execute the following command to create a volume for the Oracle binary.

```
vol create -volume ora_01_biny -aggregate aggr1 -size 50G -state  
online -type RW -snapshot-policy none -tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

3. Execute the following command to create a volume for Oracle data.

```
vol create -volume ora_01_data -aggregate aggr1 -size 100G -state  
online -type RW -snapshot-policy none -tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

4. Execute the following command to create a volume for Oracle logs.

```
vol create -volume ora_01_logs -aggregate aggr1 -size 100G -state  
online -type RW -snapshot-policy none -tiering-policy snapshot-only
```

5. Create a binary LUN within the database binary volume.

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_01_biny/ora_01_biny_01 -size 40G -ostype  
linux
```

6. Create data LUNs within the database data volume.

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_01 -size 20G -ostype  
linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_02 -size 20G -ostype  
linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_03 -size 20G -ostype  
linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_04 -size 20G -ostype  
linux
```

7. Create log LUNs within the database logs volume.

```
lun create -path /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_01 -size 40G -ostype linux  
lun create -path /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_02 -size 40G -ostype linux
```

8. Create an igroup for the EC2 instance with the initiator retrieved from step 14 of the EC2 kernel configuration above.

```
igroup create -igroup ora_01 -protocol iscsi -ostype linux  
-initiator iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:f65fed7641c2
```

9. Map the LUNs to the igroup created above. Increment the LUN ID sequentially for each additional LUN within a volume.

```
lun map -path /vol/ora_01_biny/ora_01_biny_01 -igroup ora_01  
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 0  
lun map -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_01 -igroup ora_01  
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 1  
lun map -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_02 -igroup ora_01  
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 2  
lun map -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_03 -igroup ora_01  
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 3  
lun map -path /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_04 -igroup ora_01  
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 4  
lun map -path /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_01 -igroup ora_01  
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 5  
lun map -path /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_02 -igroup ora_01  
-vserver svm_ora -lun-id 6
```

10. Validate the LUN mapping.

```
mapping show
```

This is expected to return:



```
FsxId02ad7bf3476b741df::> mapping show
```

```
(lun mapping show)
```

Vserver Protocol	Path	Igroup	LUN ID
svm_ora iscsi	/vol/ora_01_biny/ora_01_biny_01	ora_01	0
svm_ora iscsi	/vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_01	ora_01	1
svm_ora iscsi	/vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_02	ora_01	2
svm_ora iscsi	/vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_03	ora_01	3
svm_ora iscsi	/vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_04	ora_01	4
svm_ora iscsi	/vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_01	ora_01	5
svm_ora iscsi	/vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_02	ora_01	6

## Database storage configuration

Now, import and set up the FSx storage for the Oracle grid infrastructure and database installation on the EC2 instance host.

1. Log into the EC2 instance via SSH as the `ec2-user` with your SSH key and EC2 instance IP address.

```
ssh -i ora_01.pem ec2-user@172.30.15.58
```

2. Discover the FSx iSCSI endpoints using either SVM iSCSI IP address. Then change to your environment-specific portal address.

```
sudo iscsiadm iscsiadm --mode discovery --op update --type  
sendtargets --portal 172.30.15.51
```

3. Establish iSCSI sessions by logging into each target.

```
sudo iscsiadm --mode node -l all
```

The expected output from the command is:

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ sudo iscsiadm --mode node -l all  
Logging in to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-  
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:  
172.30.15.51,3260]  
Logging in to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-  
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:  
172.30.15.13,3260]  
Login to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-  
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:  
172.30.15.51,3260] successful.  
Login to [iface: default, target: iqn.1992-  
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3, portal:  
172.30.15.13,3260] successful.
```

4. View and validate a list of active iSCSI sessions.

```
sudo iscsiadm --mode session
```

Return the iSCSI sessions.

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ sudo iscsiadm --mode session  
tcp: [1] 172.30.15.51:3260,1028 iqn.1992-  
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3 (non-flash)  
tcp: [2] 172.30.15.13:3260,1029 iqn.1992-  
08.com.netapp:sn.1f795e65c74911edb785affbf0a2b26e:vs.3 (non-flash)
```

5. Verify that the LUNs were imported into the host.

```
sudo sanlun lun show
```

This will return a list of Oracle LUNs from FSx.

```

[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ sudo sanlun lun show
controller(7mode/E-Series)/                               device
host                lun
vservers(cDOT/FlashRay)  lun-pathname
filename            adapter  protocol  size  product

svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_02
/dev/sdn             host3     iSCSI    40g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_01
/dev/sdm             host3     iSCSI    40g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_03
/dev/sdk             host3     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_04
/dev/sdl             host3     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_01
/dev/sdi             host3     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_02
/dev/sdj             host3     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_biny/ora_01_biny_01
/dev/sdh             host3     iSCSI    40g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_02
/dev/sdg             host2     iSCSI    40g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_01
/dev/sdf             host2     iSCSI    40g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_04
/dev/sde             host2     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_02
/dev/sdc             host2     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_03
/dev/sdd             host2     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_01
/dev/sdb             host2     iSCSI    20g   cDOT
svm_ora              /vol/ora_01_biny/ora_01_biny_01
/dev/sda             host2     iSCSI    40g   cDOT

```

6. Configure the `multipath.conf` file with following default and blacklist entries.

```

sudo vi /etc/multipath.conf

defaults {
    find_multipaths yes
    user_friendly_names yes
}

blacklist {
    devnode "^(ram|raw|loop|fd|md|dm-|sr|scd|st) [0-9]*"
    devnode "^hd[a-z]"
    devnode "^cciss.*"
}

```

7. Start the multipath service.

```
sudo systemctl start multipathd
```

Now multipath devices appear in the `/dev/mapper` directory.

```

[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ ls -l /dev/mapper
total 0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e68512d -> ../dm-0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685141 -> ../dm-1
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685142 -> ../dm-2
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685143 -> ../dm-3
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685144 -> ../dm-4
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685145 -> ../dm-5
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:13
3600a09806c574235472455534e685146 -> ../dm-6
crw----- 1 root root 10, 236 Mar 21 18:19 control

```

8. Log into the FSx cluster as the `fsxadmin` user via SSH to retrieve the serial-hex number for each LUN start with `6c574xxx...`, the HEX number start with `3600a0980`, which is AWS vendor ID.

```
lun show -fields serial-hex
```

and return as follow:

```
FsxId02ad7bf3476b741df::> lun show -fields serial-hex
vserver path                               serial-hex
-----
svm_ora /vol/ora_01_biny/ora_01_biny_01 6c574235472455534e68512d
svm_ora /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_01 6c574235472455534e685141
svm_ora /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_02 6c574235472455534e685142
svm_ora /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_03 6c574235472455534e685143
svm_ora /vol/ora_01_data/ora_01_data_04 6c574235472455534e685144
svm_ora /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_01 6c574235472455534e685145
svm_ora /vol/ora_01_logs/ora_01_logs_02 6c574235472455534e685146
7 entries were displayed.
```

9. Update the `/dev/multipath.conf` file to add a user-friendly name for the multipath device.

```
sudo vi /etc/multipath.conf
```

with following entries:

```

multipaths {
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e68512d
        alias         ora_01_biny_01
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685141
        alias         ora_01_data_01
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685142
        alias         ora_01_data_02
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685143
        alias         ora_01_data_03
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685144
        alias         ora_01_data_04
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685145
        alias         ora_01_logs_01
    }
    multipath {
        wwid          3600a09806c574235472455534e685146
        alias         ora_01_logs_02
    }
}

```

10. Reboot the multipath service to verify that the devices under `/dev/mapper` have changed to LUN names versus serial-hex IDs.

```
sudo systemctl restart multipathd
```

Check `/dev/mapper` to return as following:

```
[ec2-user@ip-172-30-15-58 ~]$ ls -l /dev/mapper
total 0
crw----- 1 root root 10, 236 Mar 21 18:19 control
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_01_biny_01 -> ../dm-
0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_01_data_01 -> ../dm-
1
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_01_data_02 -> ../dm-
2
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_01_data_03 -> ../dm-
3
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_01_data_04 -> ../dm-
4
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_01_logs_01 -> ../dm-
5
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root      7 Mar 21 20:41 ora_01_logs_02 -> ../dm-
6
```

11. Partition the binary LUN with a single primary partition.

```
sudo fdisk /dev/mapper/ora_01_biny_01
```

12. Format the partitioned binary LUN with an XFS file system.

```
sudo mkfs.xfs /dev/mapper/ora_01_biny_01p1
```

13. Mount the binary LUN to /u01.

```
sudo mount -t xfs /dev/mapper/ora_01_biny_01p1 /u01
```

14. Change /u01 mount point ownership to the Oracle user and its associated primary group.

```
sudo chown oracle:oinstall /u01
```

15. Find the UUID of the binary LUN.

```
sudo blkid /dev/mapper/ora_01_biny_01p1
```

16. Add a mount point to /etc/fstab.



```
sudo vi /etc/fstab
```

Add the following line.

```
UUID=d89fb1c9-4f89-4de4-b4d9-17754036d11d    /u01    xfs
defaults,nofail 0                2
```



It is important to mount the binary with only the UUID and with the nofail option to avoid possible root-lock issues during EC2-instance reboot.

17. As the root user, add the udev rule for Oracle devices.

```
vi /etc/udev/rules.d/99-oracle-asmdevices.rules
```

Include following entries:

```
ENV{DM_NAME}=="ora*", GROUP=="oinstall", OWNER=="oracle",
MODE=="660"
```

18. As the root user, reload the udev rules.

```
udevadm control --reload-rules
```

19. As the root user, trigger the udev rules.

```
udevadm trigger
```

20. As the root user, reload multipathd.

```
systemctl restart multipathd
```

21. Reboot the EC2 instance host.

## Oracle grid infrastructure installation

1. Log into the EC2 instance as the ec2-user via SSH and enable password authentication by uncommenting `PasswordAuthentication yes` and then commenting out `PasswordAuthentication no`.

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

2. Restart the sshd service.

```
sudo systemctl restart sshd
```

3. Reset the Oracle user password.

```
sudo passwd oracle
```

4. Log in as the Oracle Restart software owner user (oracle). Create an Oracle directory as follows:

```
mkdir -p /u01/app/oracle  
mkdir -p /u01/app/oraInventory
```

5. Change the directory permission setting.

```
chmod -R 775 /u01/app
```

6. Create a grid home directory and change to it.

```
mkdir -p /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid  
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid
```

7. Unzip the grid installation files.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/LINUX.X64_193000_grid_home.zip
```

8. From grid home, delete the OPatch directory.

```
rm -rf OPatch
```

9. From grid home, unzip `p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip`.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

10. From grid home, revise `cv/admin/cvu_config`, uncomment and replace `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OEL5` with `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OL7`.

```
vi cv/admin/cvu_config
```

11. Prepare a `gridsetup.rsp` file for silent installation and place the `rsp` file in the `/tmp/archive` directory. The `rsp` file should cover sections A, B, and G with the following information:

```
INVENTORY_LOCATION=/u01/app/oraInventory
oracle.install.option=HA_CONFIG
ORACLE_BASE=/u01/app/oracle
oracle.install.asm.OSDBA=dba
oracle.install.asm.OSOPER=oper
oracle.install.asm.OSASM=asm
oracle.install.asm.SYSASMPassword="SetPWD"
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.name=DATA
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.redundancy=EXTERNAL
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.AUSize=4
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.disks=/dev/mapper/ora_01_data_01,/dev/mapper/ora_01_data_02,/dev/mapper/ora_01_data_03,/dev/mapper/ora_01_data_04
oracle.install.asm.diskGroup.diskDiscoveryString=/dev/mapper/*
oracle.install.asm.monitorPassword="SetPWD"
oracle.install.asm.configureAFD=true
```

12. Log into the EC2 instance as the root user and set `ORACLE_HOME` and `ORACLE_BASE`.

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid
export ORACLE_BASE=/tmp
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/bin
```

13. Provision disk devices for use with the Oracle ASM filter driver.

```
./asmcmd afd_label DATA01 /dev/mapper/ora_01_data_01 --init
./asmcmd afd_label DATA02 /dev/mapper/ora_01_data_02 --init
./asmcmd afd_label DATA03 /dev/mapper/ora_01_data_03 --init
./asmcmd afd_label DATA04 /dev/mapper/ora_01_data_04 --init
./asmcmd afd_label LOGS01 /dev/mapper/ora_01_logs_01 --init
./asmcmd afd_label LOGS02 /dev/mapper/ora_01_logs_02 --init
```

14. Install `cvuqdisk-1.0.10-1.rpm`.

```
rpm -ivh /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/cv/rpm/cvuqdisk-1.0.10-1.rpm
```

15. Unset `$ORACLE_BASE`.

```
unset ORACLE_BASE
```

16. Log into the EC2 instance as the Oracle user and extract the patch in the `/tmp/archive` folder.

```
unzip /tmp/archive/p34762026_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip -d /tmp/archive
```

17. From grid home `/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid` and as the oracle user, launch `gridSetup.sh` for grid infrastructure installation.

```
./gridSetup.sh -applyRU /tmp/archive/34762026/ -silent
-responseFile /tmp/archive/gridsetup.rsp
```

Ignore the warnings about wrong groups for grid infrastructure. We are using a single Oracle user to manage Oracle Restart, so this is expected.

18. As root user, execute the following script(s):

```
/u01/app/oraInventory/orainstRoot.sh
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/root.sh
```

19. As root user, reload the multipathd.

```
systemctl restart multipathd
```

20. As the Oracle user, execute the following command to complete the configuration:

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid/gridSetup.sh -executeConfigTools  
-responseFile /tmp/archive/gridsetup.rsp -silent
```

21. As the Oracle user, create the LOGS disk group.

```
bin/asmca -silent -sysAsmPassword 'yourPWD' -asmsnmpPassword  
'yourPWD' -createDiskGroup -diskGroupName LOGS -disk 'AFD:LOGS*'  
-redundancy EXTERNAL -au_size 4
```

22. As the Oracle user, validate grid services after installation configuration.

```
bin/crsctl stat res -t  
+  
Name                          Target  State          Server  
State details  
Local Resources  
ora.DATA.dg                    ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-58  
STABLE  
ora.LISTENER.lsnr              ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-58  
STABLE  
ora.LOGS.dg                    ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-58  
STABLE  
ora.asm                        ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-58  
Started,STABLE  
ora.ons                        OFFLINE  OFFLINE       ip-172-30-15-58  
STABLE  
Cluster Resources  
ora.cssd                      ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-58  
STABLE  
ora.diskmon                   OFFLINE  OFFLINE  
STABLE  
ora.driver.afd                ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-58  
STABLE  
ora.evmd                      ONLINE  ONLINE        ip-172-30-15-58  
STABLE
```

23. Valiate ASM filter driver status.

```

[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 grid]$ export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 grid]$ export ORACLE_SID=+ASM
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 grid]$ export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 grid]$ asmcmd
ASMCMDS> lsdg
State      Type      Rebal  Sector  Logical_Sector  Block      AU
Total_MB  Free_MB  Req_mir_free_MB  Usable_file_MB  Offline_disks
Voting_files  Name
MOUNTED  EXTERN  N      512     512     4096    1048576
81920    81847      0      81847      0
N  DATA/
MOUNTED  EXTERN  N      512     512     4096    1048576
81920    81853      0      81853      0
N  LOGS/
ASMCMDS> afd_state
ASMCMDS-9526: The AFD state is 'LOADED' and filtering is 'ENABLED' on
host 'ip-172-30-15-58.ec2.internal'

```

## Oracle database installation

1. Log in as the Oracle user and unset `$ORACLE_HOME` and `$ORACLE_SID` if it is set.

```
unset ORACLE_HOME
unset ORACLE_SID
```

2. Create the Oracle DB home directory and change to it.

```
mkdir /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
cd /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
```

3. Unzip the Oracle DB installation files.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/LINUX.X64_193000_db_home.zip
```

4. From the DB home, delete the OPatch directory.

```
rm -rf OPatch
```

5. From DB home, unzip `p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip`.

```
unzip -q /tmp/archive/p6880880_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

6. From DB home, revise `cv/admin/cvu_config`, and uncomment and replace `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OEL5` with `CV_ASSUME_DISTID=OL7`.

```
vi cv/admin/cvu_config
```

7. From the `/tmp/archive` directory, unpack the DB 19.18 RU patch.

```
unzip p34765931_190000_Linux-x86-64.zip
```

8. Prepare the DB silent install `rsp` file in `/tmp/archive/dbinstall.rsp` directory with the following values:

```
oracle.install.option=INSTALL_DB_SWONLY
UNIX_GROUP_NAME=oinstall
INVENTORY_LOCATION=/u01/app/oraInventory
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
ORACLE_BASE=/u01/app/oracle
oracle.install.db.InstallEdition=EE
oracle.install.db.OSDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSOPER_GROUP=oper
oracle.install.db.OSBACKUPDBA_GROUP=oper
oracle.install.db.OSDGDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSKMDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.OSRACDBA_GROUP=dba
oracle.install.db.rootconfig.executeRootScript=false
```

9. From db1 home /u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1, execute silent software-only DB installation.

```
./runInstaller -applyRU /tmp/archive/34765931/ -silent
-ignorePrereqFailure -responseFile /tmp/archive/dbinstall.rsp
```

10. As root user, run the `root.sh` script after software-only installation.

```
/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1/root.sh
```

11. As Oracle user, create the `dbca.rsp` file with the following entries:



```
gdbName=db1.demo.netapp.com
sid=db1
createAsContainerDatabase=true
numberOfPDBs=3
pdbName=db1_pdb
useLocalUndoForPDBs=true
pdbAdminPassword="yourPWD"
templateName=General_Purpose.dbc
sysPassword="yourPWD"
systemPassword="yourPWD"
dbsnmpPassword="yourPWD"
datafileDestination=+DATA
recoveryAreaDestination=+LOGS
storageType=ASM
diskGroupName=DATA
characterSet=AL32UTF8
nationalCharacterSet=AL16UTF16
listeners=LISTENER
databaseType=MULTIPURPOSE
automaticMemoryManagement=false
totalMemory=8192
```

12. As Oracle user, launch DB creation with dbca.

```
bin/dbca -silent -createDatabase -responseFile /tmp/archive/dbca.rsp
```

output:

Prepare for db operation

7% complete

Registering database with Oracle Restart

11% complete

Copying database files

33% complete

Creating and starting Oracle instance

35% complete

38% complete

42% complete

45% complete

48% complete

Completing Database Creation

53% complete

55% complete

56% complete

Creating Pluggable Databases

60% complete

64% complete

69% complete

78% complete

Executing Post Configuration Actions

100% complete

Database creation complete. For details check the logfiles at:

/u01/app/oracle/cfgtoollogs/dbca/db1.

Database Information:

Global Database Name:db1.demo.netapp.com

System Identifier(SID):db1

Look at the log file "/u01/app/oracle/cfgtoollogs/dbca/db1/db1.log"  
for further details.

13. As Oracle user, validate Oracle Restart HA services after DB creation.

```
[oracle@ip-172-30-15-58 db1]$ ../grid/bin/crsctl stat res -t
```

Name	Target	State	Server	State
Local Resources				
ora.DATA.dg	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	STABLE
ora.LISTENER.lsnr	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	STABLE
ora.LOGS.dg	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	STABLE
ora.asm	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	Started,STABLE
ora.ons	OFFLINE	OFFLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	STABLE
Cluster Resources				
ora.cssd	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	STABLE
ora.dbf.db	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	Open,HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1,STABLE
ora.diskmon	OFFLINE	OFFLINE		STABLE
ora.driver.afd	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	STABLE
ora.evmd	ONLINE	ONLINE	ip-172-30-15-58	STABLE

14. Set the Oracle user `.bash_profile`.

```
vi ~/.bash_profile
```

15. Add following entries:

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/db1
export ORACLE_SID=db1
export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin
alias asm='export
ORACLE_HOME=/u01/app/oracle/product/19.0.0/grid;export
ORACLE_SID=+ASM;export PATH=$PATH:$ORACLE_HOME/bin'
```

16. Validate the CDB/PDB created.

```
/home/oracle/.bash_profile

sqlplus / as sysdba
```

```
SQL> select name, open_mode from v$database;
```

```
NAME          OPEN_MODE
```

```
DB1           READ WRITE
```

```
SQL> select name from v$datafile;
```

```
NAME
```

```
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/system.256.1132176177
```

```
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/sysaux.257.1132176221
```

```
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/undotbs1.258.1132176247
```

```
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/system.265.1132177009
```

```
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/sysaux.266.1132177009
```

```
+DATA/DB1/DATAFILE/users.259.1132176247
```

```
+DATA/DB1/86B637B62FE07A65E053F706E80A27CA/DATAFILE/undotbs1.267.1132177009
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/system.271.1132177853
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/sysaux.272.1132177853
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/undotbs1.270.1132177853
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F7852758DCD6B800E0533A0F1EAC1DC6/DATAFILE/users.274.1132177871
```

```
NAME
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/system.276.1132177871
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/sysaux.277.1132177871
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/undotbs1.275.1132177871
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F785288BBCD1BA78E0533A0F1EACCD6F/DATAFILE/users.279.1132177889
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/system.281.1132177889
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/sysaux.282.1132177889
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/undotbs1.280.1132177889
```

```
+DATA/DB1/F78529A14DD8BB18E0533A0F1EACB8ED/DATAFILE/users.284.1132177907
```

```
19 rows selected.
```

```
SQL> show pdbs
```

CON_ID	CON_NAME	OPEN MODE	RESTRICTED
2	PDB\$SEED	READ ONLY	NO
3	DB1_PDB1	READ WRITE	NO
4	DB1_PDB2	READ WRITE	NO
5	DB1_PDB3	READ WRITE	NO

```
SQL>
```

17. Set the DB recovery destination size to the +LOGS disk group size.

```
alter system set db_recovery_file_dest_size = 80G scope=both;
```

18. Log into the database with sqlplus and enable archive log mode.

```
sqlplus /as sysdba.  
  
shutdown immediate;  
  
startup mount;  
  
alter database archivelog;  
  
alter database open;
```

This completes Oracle 19c version 19.18 Restart deployment on an Amazon FSx for ONTAP and EC2 compute instance. If desired, NetApp recommends relocating the Oracle control file and online log files to the +LOGS disk group.

### Automated deployment option

Refer to [TR-4986: Simplified, Automated Oracle Deployment on Amazon FSx ONTAP with iSCSI](#) for details.

### Oracle Database backup, restore, and clone with SnapCenter Service

See [SnapCenter Services for Oracle](#) for details on Oracle database backup, restore, and clone with NetApp BlueXP console.

## Where to find additional information

To learn more about the information described in this document, review the following documents and/or websites:

- Installing Oracle Grid Infrastructure for a Standalone Server with a New Database Installation

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-oracle-grid-infrastructure-for-a-standalone-server-with-a-new-database-installation.html#GUID-0B1CEE8C-C893-46AA-8A6A-7B5FAAEC72B3>

- Installing and Configuring Oracle Database Using Response Files

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/oracle-database/19/ladbi/installing-and-configuring-oracle-database-using-response-files.html#GUID-D53355E9-E901-4224-9A2A-B882070EDDF7>

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

<https://aws.amazon.com/fsx/netapp-ontap/>

- Amazon EC2

[https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc\\_channel=ps&s\\_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef\\_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw\\_wcB:G:s&s\\_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2](https://aws.amazon.com/pm/ec2/?trk=36c6da98-7b20-48fa-8225-4784bced9843&sc_channel=ps&s_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2&ef_id=Cj0KCQiA54KfBhCKARIsAJzSrdqwQrghn6l71jiWzSeaT9Uh1-vY-VfhJixF-xnv5rWwn2S7RqZOTQ0aAh7eEALw_wcB:G:s&s_kwcid=ALi4422!3!467723097970!e!!g!!aws%20ec2)

## Oracle Database Deployment on AWS EC2 and FSx Best Practices

### WP-7357: Oracle Database Deployment on EC2 and FSx Best Practices Introduction

Allen Cao, Niyaz Mohamed, Jeffrey Steiner, NetApp

Many mission-critical enterprise Oracle databases are still hosted on-premises, and many enterprises are looking to migrate these Oracle databases to a public cloud. Often, these Oracle databases are application centric and thus require user-specific configurations, a capability that is missing from many database-as-a-service public-cloud offerings. Therefore, the current database landscape calls for a public-cloud-based Oracle database solution built from a high-performance, scalable compute and storage service that can accommodate unique requirements. AWS EC2 compute instances and the AWS FSx storage service might be the missing pieces of this puzzle that you can leverage to build and migrate your mission critical Oracle database workloads to a public cloud.

Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) is a web service that provides secure, resizable compute capacity in the cloud. It is designed to make web-scale cloud computing easier for enterprises. The simple Amazon EC2 web-service interface allows you to obtain and configure capacity with minimal friction. It provides you with complete control of your computing resources and lets you run on Amazon's proven computing environment.

Amazon FSx for ONTAP is an AWS storage service that uses industry-leading NetApp ONTAP block and file storage, which exposes NFS, SMB, and iSCSI. With such a powerful storage engine, it has never been easier to relocate mission-critical Oracle database apps to AWS with sub-millisecond response times, multiple GBps of throughput, and 100,000+ IOPS per database instance. Better yet, the FSx storage service comes with native replication capability that allows you to easily migrate your on-premises Oracle database to AWS or to replicate your mission critical Oracle database to a secondary AWS availability zone for HA or DR.

The goal of this documentation is to provide step-by-step processes, procedures, and best-practice guidance on how to deploy and configure an Oracle database with FSx storage and an EC2 instance that delivers performance similar to an on-premises system. NetApp also provides an automation toolkit that automates most of the tasks that are required for the deployment, configuration, and management of your Oracle database workload in the AWS public cloud.

To learn more about the solution and use case, take a look at following overview video:

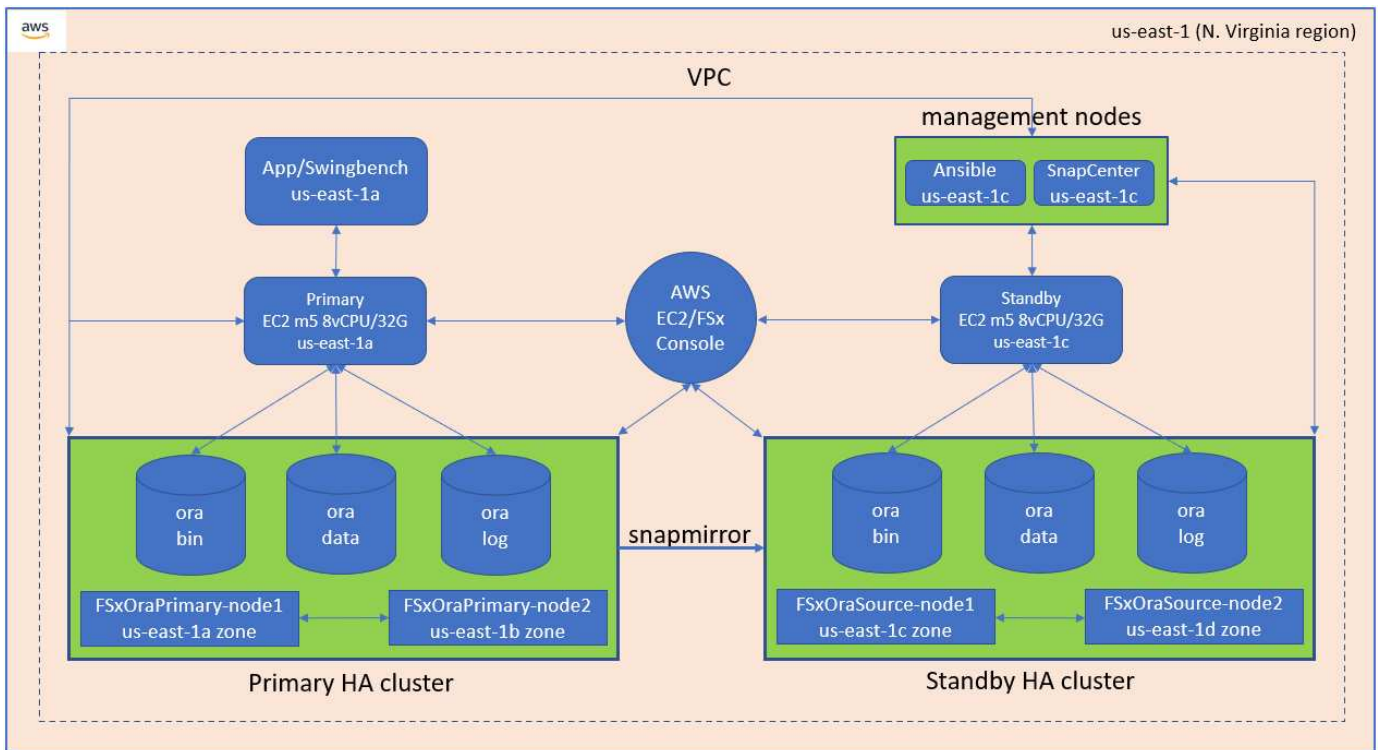
[Modernize your Oracle database with hybrid cloud in AWS and FSx ONTAP, Part1 - Use case and solution architecture](#)

## **Solution architecture**

The following architecture diagram illustrates a highly available Oracle database deployment on an AWS EC2 instance with the FSx storage service. A similar deployment scheme but with the standby in a different region can be set up for disaster recovery.

Within the environment, the Oracle compute instance is deployed via an AWS EC2 instance console. There are multiple EC2 instance types available from the console. NetApp recommends deploying a database-oriented EC2 instance type such as an m5 Ami image with RedHat enterprise Linux 8 and up to 10Gps of network bandwidth.

Oracle database storage on FSx volumes on the other hand is deployed with the AWS FSx console or CLI. The Oracle binary, data, or log volumes are subsequently presented and mounted on an EC2 instance Linux host. Each data or log volume can have multiple LUNs allocated depending on the underlying storage protocol employed.



An FSx storage cluster is designed with double redundancy, so that both the primary and standby storage clusters are deployed in two different availability zones. Database volumes are replicated from a primary FSx cluster to a standby FSx cluster at a user-configurable interval for all Oracle binary, data, and log volumes.

This high availability Oracle environment is managed with an Ansible controller node and a SnapCenter backup server and UI tool. Oracle installation, configuration, and replication are automated using Ansible playbook-based tool kits. Any update to the Oracle EC2 instance kernel operating system or Oracle patching can be executed in parallel to keep the primary and standby in sync. In fact, the initial automation setup can be easily expanded to perform some repeating daily Oracle tasks if needed.

SnapCenter provides workflows for Oracle database point-in-time recovery or for database cloning at either the primary or standby zones if needed. Through the SnapCenter UI, you can configure Oracle database backup and replication to standby FSx storage for high availability or disaster recovery based on your RTO or RPO objectives.

The solution provides an alternative process that delivers capabilities similar to those available from Oracle RAC and Data Guard deployment.

## Factors to consider for Oracle database deployment

A public cloud provides many choices for compute and storage, and using the correct type of compute instance and storage engine is a good place to start for database deployment. You should also select compute and storage configurations that are optimized for Oracle databases.

The following sections describe the key considerations when deploying Oracle database in an AWS public cloud on an EC2 instance with FSx storage.



## VM performance

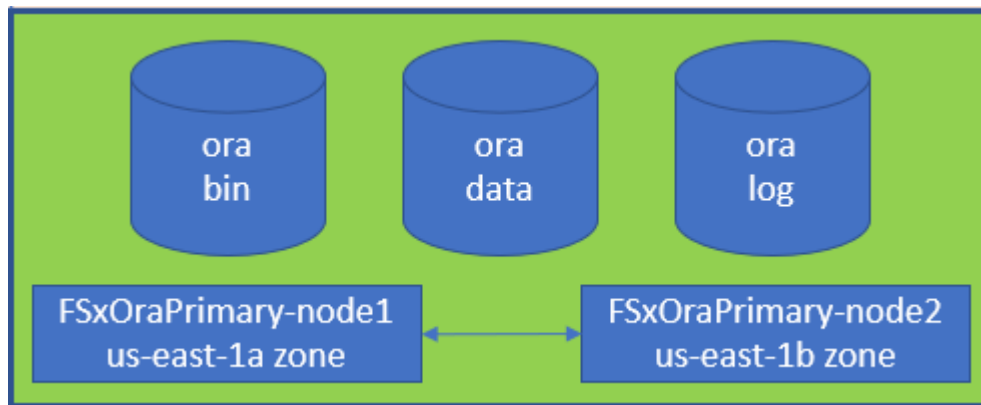
Selecting the right VM size is important for optimal performance of a relational database in a public cloud. For better performance, NetApp recommends using an EC2 M5 Series instance for Oracle deployment, which is optimized for database workloads. The same instance type is also used to power a RDS instance for Oracle by AWS.

- Choose the correct vCPU and RAM combination based on workload characteristics.
- Add swap space to a VM. The default EC2 instance deployment does not create a swap space, which is not optimal for a database.

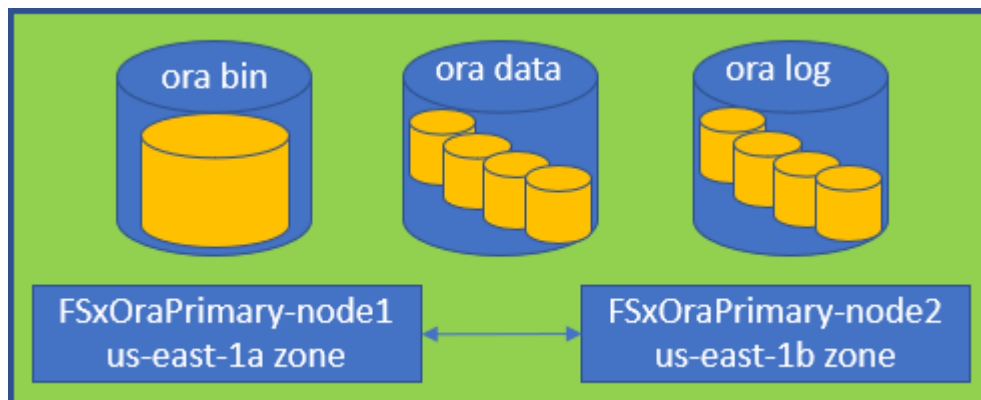
## Storage layout and settings

NetApp recommends the following storage layout:

- For NFS storage, the recommended volume layout is three volumes: one for the Oracle binary; one for Oracle data and a duplicate control file; and one for the Oracle active log, archived log, and control file.



- For iSCSI storage, the recommended volume layout is three volumes: one for the Oracle binary; one for Oracle data and a duplicate control file; and one for the Oracle active log, archived log, and control file. However, each data and log volume ideally should contain four LUNs. The LUNs are ideally balanced on the HA cluster nodes.



- For storage IOPS and throughput, you can choose the threshold for provisioned IOPS and throughput for the FSx storage cluster, and these parameters can be adjusted on the fly anytime the workload changes.
  - The auto IOPS setting is three IOPS per GiB of allocated storage capacity or user defined storage up to 80,000.

- The throughput level is incremented as follow: 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2045 MBps.

Review the [Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP performance](#) documentation when sizing throughput and IOPS.

## NFS configuration

Linux, the most common operating system, includes native NFS capabilities. Oracle offers the direct NFS (dNFS) client natively integrated into Oracle. Oracle has supported NFSv3 for over 20 years. dNFS is supported with NFSv3 with all versions of Oracle. NFSv4 is supported with all OS's that follow the NFSv4 standard. dNFS support for NFSv4 requires Oracle 12.1.0.2 or higher. NFSv4.1 requires specific OS support. Consult the NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool (IMT) for supported OS's. dNFS support for NFSv4.1 requires Oracle version 19.3.0.0 or higher.

Automated Oracle deployment using the NetApp automation toolkit automatically configures dNFS on NFSv3.

Other factors to consider:

- TCP slot tables are the NFS equivalent of host-bus-adapter (HBA) queue depth. These tables control the number of NFS operations that can be outstanding at any one time. The default value is usually 16, which is far too low for optimum performance. The opposite problem occurs on newer Linux kernels, which can automatically increase the TCP slot table limit to a level that saturates the NFS server with requests.

For optimum performance and to prevent performance problems, adjust the kernel parameters that control the TCP slot tables to 128.

```
sysctl -a | grep tcp.*.slot_table
```

- The following table provides recommended NFS mount options for Linux NFSv3 - single instance.

File Type	Mount Options
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Control files</li> <li>• Data files</li> <li>• Redo logs</li> </ul>	<code>rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsz=65536,wsz=65536</code>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ORACLE_HOME</li> <li>• ORACLE_BASE</li> </ul>	<code>rw,bg,hard,vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600,rsz=65536,wsz=65536</code>



Before using dNFS, verify that the patches described in Oracle Doc 1495104.1 are installed. The NetApp Support matrix for NFSv3 and NFSv4 do not include specific operating systems. All OSs that obey the RFC are supported. When searching the online IMT for NFSv3 or NFSv4 support, do not select a specific OS because no matches will be displayed. All OSs are implicitly supported by the general policy.

## High availability

As indicated in the solution architecture, HA is built on storage-level replication. Therefore, the startup and availability of Oracle is contingent on how quickly the compute and storage can be brought up and recovered. See the following key factors:

- Have a standby compute instance ready and synced up with the primary through Ansible parallel update to

both hosts.

- Replicate the binary volume from the primary for standby purposes so that you do not need to install Oracle at the last minute and figure out what needs to be installed and patched.
- Replication frequency dictates how fast the Oracle database can be recovered to make service available. There is a trade off between the replication frequency and storage consumption.
- Leverage automation to make recovery and switch over to standby quick and free of human error. NetApp provides an automation toolkit for this purpose.

## Step-by-Step Oracle Deployment Procedures on AWS EC2 and FSx

This section describes the deployment procedures of deploying Oracle RDS custom database with FSx storage.

### Deploy an EC2 Linux instance for Oracle via EC2 console

If you are new to AWS, you first need to set up an AWS environment. The documentation tab at the AWS website landing page provides EC2 instruction links on how to deploy a Linux EC2 instance that can be used to host your Oracle database via the AWS EC2 console. The following section is a summary of these steps. For details, see the linked AWS EC2-specific documentation.

#### Setting up your AWS EC2 environment

You must create an AWS account to provision the necessary resources to run your Oracle environment on the EC2 and FSx service. The following AWS documentation provides the necessary details:

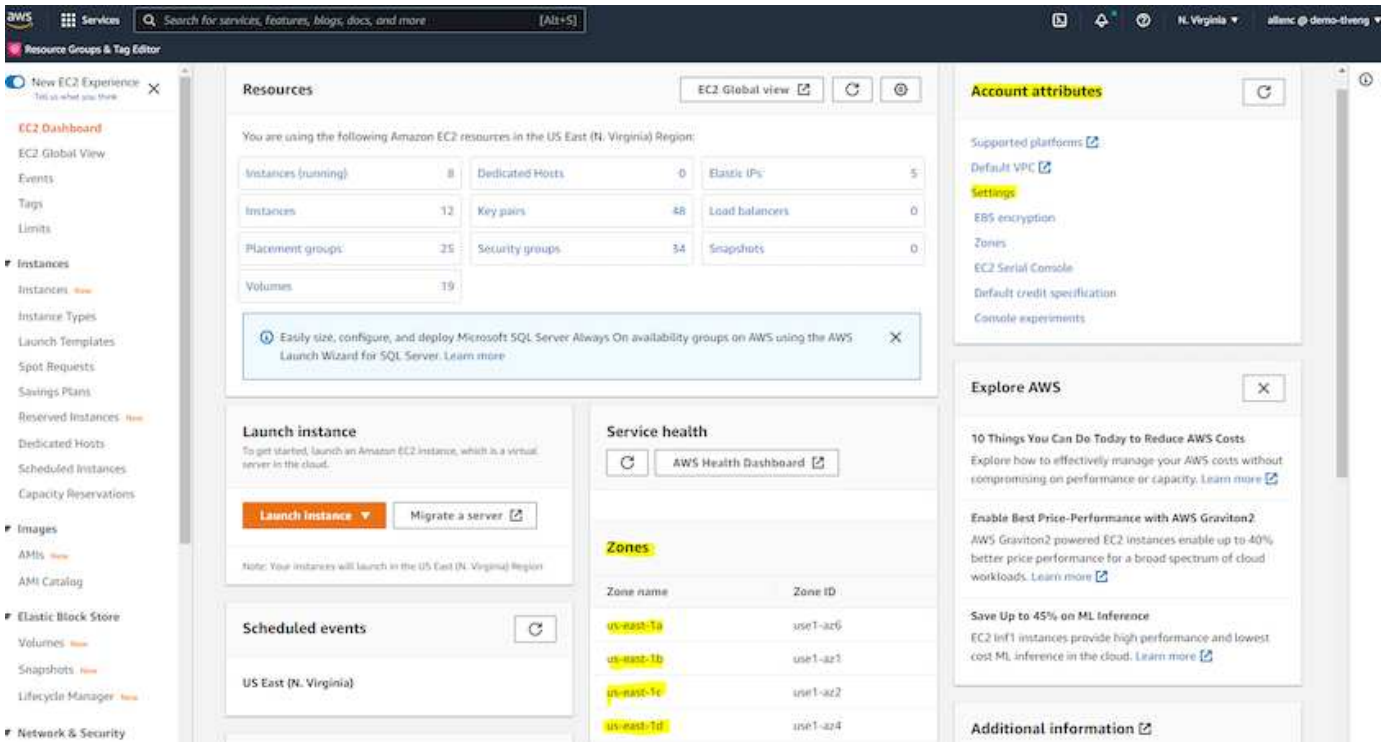
- [Set up to use Amazon EC2](#)

Key topics:

- Sign up for AWS.
- Create a key pair.
- Create a security group.

#### Enabling multiple availability zones in AWS account attributes

For an Oracle high availability configuration as demonstrated in the architecture diagram, you must enable at least four availability zones in a region. The multiple availability zones can also be situated in different regions to meet the required distances for disaster recovery.



## Creating and connecting to an EC2 instance for hosting Oracle database

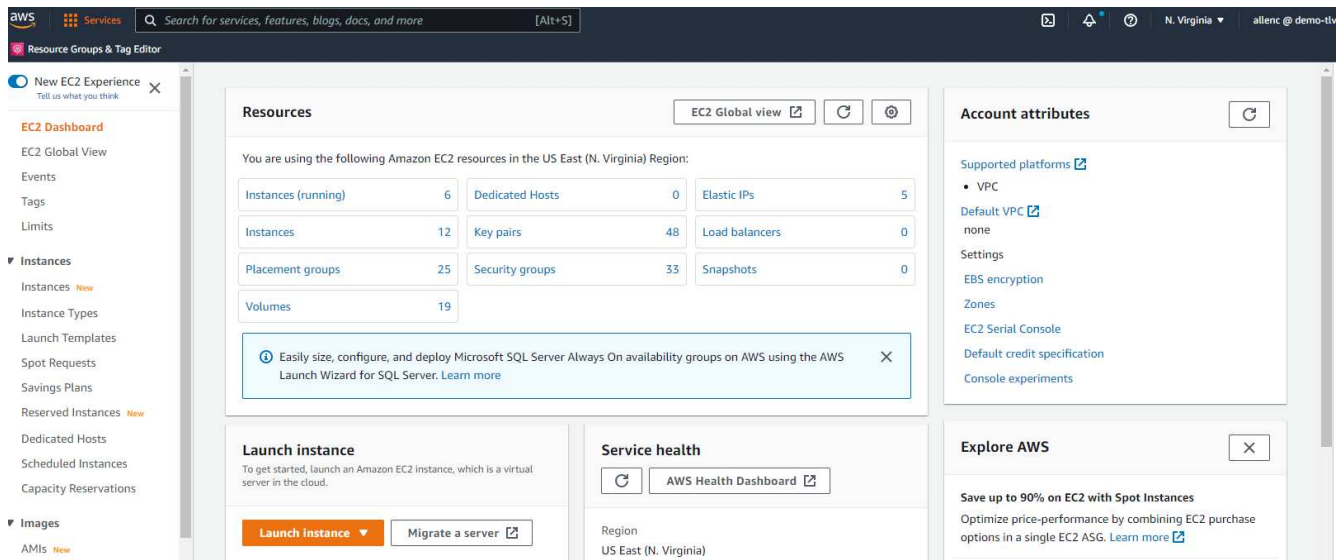
See the tutorial [Get started with Amazon EC2 Linux instances](#) for step-by-step deployment procedures and best practices.

Key topics:

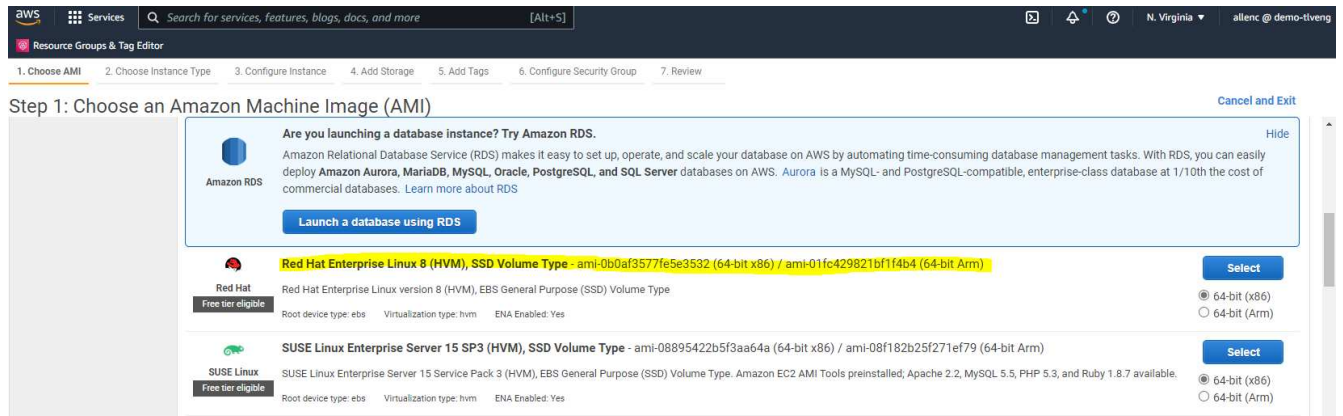
- Overview.
- Prerequisites.
- Step 1: Launch an instance.
- Step 2: Connect to your instance.
- Step 3: Clean up your instance.

The following screen shots demonstrate the deployment of an m5-type Linux instance with the EC2 console for running Oracle.

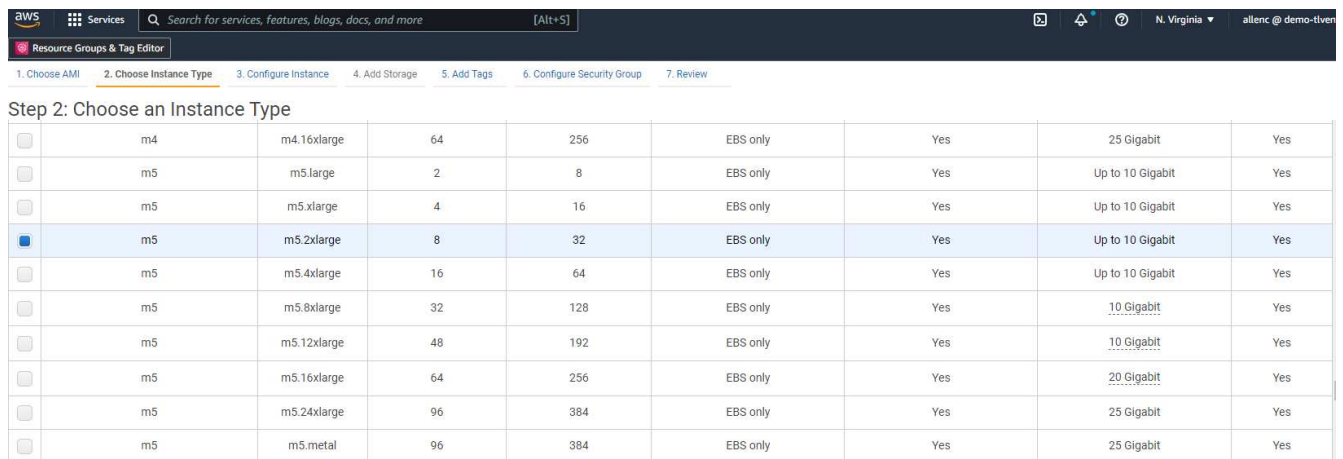
1. From the EC2 dashboard, click the yellow Launch Instance button to start the EC2 instance deployment workflow.



2. In Step 1, select "Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-0b0af3577fe5e3532 (64-bit x86) / ami-01fc429821bf1f4b4 (64-bit Arm)."



3. In Step 2, select an m5 instance type with the appropriate CPU and memory allocation based on your Oracle database workload. Click "Next: Configure Instance Details."



4. In Step 3, choose the VPC and subnet where the instance should be placed and enable public IP assignment. Click "Next: Add Storage."

aws Services Search for services, features, blogs, docs, and more [Alt+S] N. Virginia allenc @ demo-1tveng

Resource Groups & Tag Editor

1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type 3. Configure Instance 4. Add Storage 5. Add Tags 6. Configure Security Group 7. Review

### Step 3: Configure Instance Details

No default VPC found. Select another VPC, or create a new default VPC.

Configure the instance to suit your requirements. You can launch multiple instances from the same AMI, request Spot instances to take advantage of the lower pricing, assign an access management role to the instance, and more.

Number of instances 1 Launch into Auto Scaling Group

Purchasing option  Request Spot instances

Network vpc-0474064fc537e5182 Create new VPC  
No default VPC found. Create a new default VPC.

Subnet subnet-08c952541f4ab282d | us-east-1a Create new subnet  
250 IP Addresses available

Auto-assign Public IP Enable

Hostname type Use subnet setting (IP name)

DNS Hostname  Enable IP name IPv4 (A record) DNS requests  
 Enable resource-based IPv4 (A record) DNS requests  
 Enable resource-based IPv6 (AAAA record) DNS requests

Placement group  Add instance to placement group

Capacity Reservation Open

Domain join directory No directory Create new directory

IAM role None Create new IAM role

Cancel Previous Review and Launch Next: Add Storage

5. In Step 4, allocate enough space for the root disk. You may need the space to add a swap. By default, EC2 instance assign zero swap space, which is not optimal for running Oracle.

aws Services Search for services, features, blogs, docs, and more [Alt+S] N. Virginia allenc @ demo-1tveng

Resource Groups & Tag Editor

1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type 3. Configure Instance 4. Add Storage 5. Add Tags 6. Configure Security Group 7. Review

### Step 4: Add Storage

Your instance will be launched with the following storage device settings. You can attach additional EBS volumes and instance store volumes to your instance, or edit the settings of the root volume. You can also attach additional EBS volumes after launching an instance, but not instance store volumes. Learn more about storage options in Amazon EC2.

Volume Type	Device	Snapshot	Size (GiB)	Volume Type	IOPS	Throughput (MB/s)	Delete on Termination	Encryption
Root	/dev/sda1	snap-03a3ad00558b4d17c	50	General Purpose SSD (gp2)	150 / 3000	N/A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Not Encrypted

Add New Volume

Free tier eligible customers can get up to 30 GB of EBS General Purpose (SSD) or Magnetic storage. Learn more about free usage tier eligibility and usage restrictions.

Shared file systems

You currently don't have any file systems on this instance. Select "Add file system" button below to add a file system.

Add file system

Cancel Previous Review and Launch Next: Add Tags

6. In Step 5, add a tag for instance identification if needed.



aws Services Search for services, features, blogs, docs, and more [Alt+S]

Resource Groups & Tag Editor

1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type 3. Configure Instance 4. Add Storage 5. Add Tags 6. Configure Security Group 7. Review

### Step 5: Add Tags

A tag consists of a case-sensitive key-value pair. For example, you could define a tag with key = Name and value = Webservers. A copy of a tag can be applied to volumes, instances or both. Tags will be applied to all instances and volumes. [Learn more](#) about tagging your Amazon EC2 resources.

Key (128 characters maximum) Value (256 characters maximum) Instances Volumes Network Interfaces

*This resource currently has no tags*

Choose the Add tag button or click to add a Name tag.  
Make sure your IAM policy includes permissions to create tags.

Add Tag (Up to 50 tags maximum)

Cancel Previous **Review and Launch** Next: Configure Security Group

7. In Step 6, select an existing security group or create a new one with the desired inbound and outbound policy for the instance.

aws Services Search for services, features, blogs, docs, and more [Alt+S]

Resource Groups & Tag Editor

1. Choose AMI 2. Choose Instance Type 3. Configure Instance 4. Add Storage 5. Add Tags 6. Configure Security Group 7. Review

### Step 6: Configure Security Group

A security group is a set of firewall rules that control the traffic for your instance. On this page, you can add rules to allow specific traffic to reach your instance. For example, if you want to set up a web server and allow internet traffic to reach your instance, add rules that allow unrestricted access to the HTTP and HTTPS ports. You can create a new security group or select from an existing one below. [Learn more](#) about Amazon EC2 security groups.

Assign a security group:  Create a new security group  
 Select an existing security group

Security Group ID	Name	Description	Actions
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-0d746a0908b897c48	AviOCCM03112021OCCM1635951256631-OCCMSecurityGroup-B3QFHUJHRUVW	NetApp OCCM Instance External Security Group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-07b0625cd544aee16	AviOCCM0311OCCM1635943382952-OCCMSecurityGroup-1L8D4QX2SC945	NetApp OCCM Instance External Security Group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-0618122caef6c50e9	AviOCCM1103OCCM1635944222133-OCCMSecurityGroup-DX5PHX6CKVKC	NetApp OCCM Instance External Security Group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-0d63ea8c78987e660	AviOCCM1209OCCM1631452667252-OCCMSecurityGroup-T5KVZ1Q4SH48	NetApp OCCM Instance External Security Group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-0aed9f8836b48c52d	AviOCCMFSxOCCM1638110371156-OCCMSecurityGroup-N0ENZJW3TVYB	NetApp OCCM Instance External Security Group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-083a6ea5c912375	connector1OCCM1631455604110-OCCMSecurityGroup-1790QV45PH3ZW	NetApp OCCM Instance External Security Group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> sg-08148ca915189ac87	default	default VPC security group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-07f6c527620e3bb22	fsx02OCCM163339531669-OCCMSecurityGroup-1XZYCSWM15NP7	NetApp OCCM Instance External Security Group	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> sg-0f359d2ba38db749f	SG-Version10-OCE6MEs-NetAppExternalSecurityGroup-N8B50KGTk58U	ONTAP Cloud firewall rules for management and data interface	<a href="#">Copy to new</a>

Inbound rules for sg-08148ca915189ac87 (Selected security groups: sg-08148ca915189ac87)

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source	Description
All traffic	All	All	192.168.1.0/24	
All traffic	All	All	sg-08148ca915189ac87 (default)	

Cancel Previous **Review and Launch**

8. In Step 7, review the instance configuration summary, and click Launch to start instance deployment. You are prompted to create a key pair or select a key pair for access to the instance.

Step 7: Review Instance Launch

Please review your instance launch details. You can go back to edit changes for each section. Click **Launch** to assign a key pair to your instance and complete the launch process.

AMI Details Edit AMI

**Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-0b0af3577fe5e3532**  
 Free tier eligible Red Hat Enterprise Linux version 8 (HVM), EBS General Purpose (SSD) Volume Type  
 Root Device Type: ebs Virtualization type: hvm

Instance Type Edit instance type

Instance Type	ECUs	vCPUs	Memory (GiB)	Instance Storage (GB)	EBS-Optimized Available	Network Performance
m5.2xlarge	-	8	32	EBS only	Yes	Up to 10 Gigabit

Security Groups Edit security groups

Security Group ID	Name	Description
sg-08148ca915189ac87	default	default VPC security group

All selected security groups inbound rules

Type	Protocol	Port Range	Source	Description
All traffic	All	All	192.168.1.0/24	
All traffic	All	All	sg-08148ca915189ac87 (default)	

Instance Details Edit instance details

Storage Edit storage

Cancel Previous Launch

## Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair ✕

A key pair consists of a **public key** that AWS stores, and a **private key file** that you store. Together, they allow you to connect to your instance securely. For Windows AMIs, the private key file is required to obtain the password used to log into your instance. For Linux AMIs, the private key file allows you to securely SSH into your instance. Amazon EC2 supports ED25519 and RSA key pair types.

Note: The selected key pair will be added to the set of keys authorized for this instance. [Learn more about removing existing key pairs from a public AMI.](#)

Choose an existing key pair ▼

**Select a key pair**

accesststkey | RSA ▼

I acknowledge that I have access to the corresponding private key file, and that without this file, I won't be able to log into my instance.

Cancel Launch Instances

- Log into EC2 instance using an SSH key pair. Make changes to your key name and instance IP address as appropriate.

```
ssh -i ora-dblv2.pem ec2-user@54.80.114.77
```

You need to create two EC2 instances as primary and standby Oracle servers in their designated availability



zone as demonstrated in the architecture diagram.

## Provision FSx for ONTAP file systems for Oracle database storage

EC2 instance deployment allocates an EBS root volume for the OS. FSx for ONTAP file systems provides Oracle database storage volumes, including the Oracle binary, data, and log volumes. The FSx storage NFS volumes can be either provisioned from the AWS FSx console or from Oracle installation, and configuration automation that allocates the volumes as the user configures in a automation parameter file.

### Creating FSx for ONTAP file systems

Referred to this documentation [Managing FSx for ONTAP file systems](#) for creating FSx for ONTAP file systems.

Key considerations:

- SSD storage capacity. Minimum 1024 GiB, maximum 192 TiB.
- Provisioned SSD IOPS. Based on workload requirements, a maximum of 80,000 SSD IOPS per file system.
- Throughput capacity.
- Set administrator fsxadmin/vsadmin password. Required for FSx configuration automation.
- Backup and maintenance. Disable automatic daily backups; database storage backup is executed through SnapCenter scheduling.
- Retrieve the SVM management IP address as well as protocol-specific access addresses from SVM details page. Required for FSx configuration automation.

The screenshot shows the AWS Management Console interface for an Amazon FSx for ONTAP file system. The page is titled "fsx (svm-005c6edf027866ca4)". The left sidebar shows the navigation menu with "Amazon FSx" selected. The main content area is divided into two sections: "Summary" and "Endpoints".

**Summary**

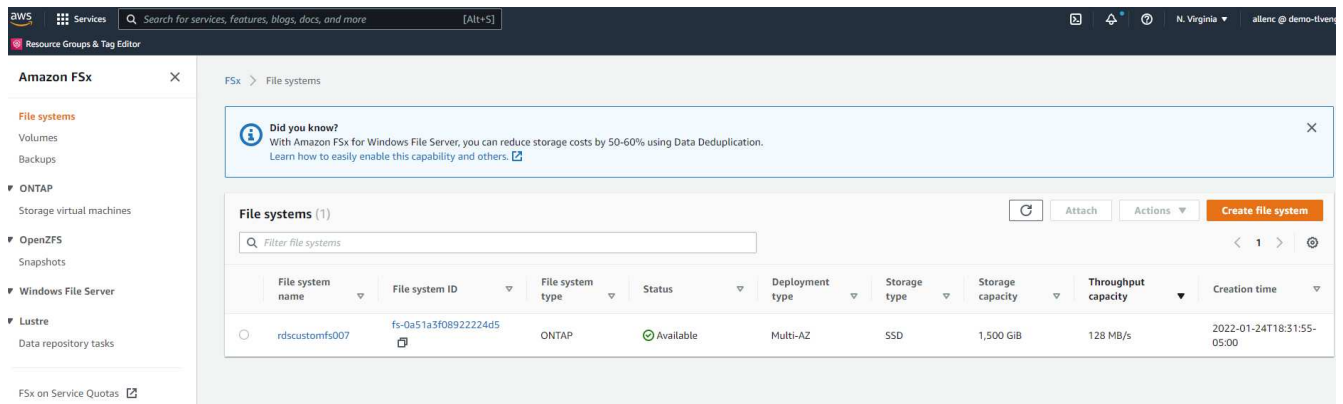
SVM ID	svm-005c6edf027866ca4	Creation time	2022-01-24T18:02:24-05:00	Active Directory	-
SVM name	fsx	Lifecycle state	Created		
UUIID	1a07ea1f-7d6e-11ec-97a9-7df96ee2a64a	Subtype	DEFAULT		
File system ID	fs-0a51a3f08922224d5				
Resource ARN	arn:aws:fsx:us-east-1:759995470648:storage-virtual-machine/fs-0a51a3f08922224d5/svm-005c6edf027866ca4				

**Endpoints**

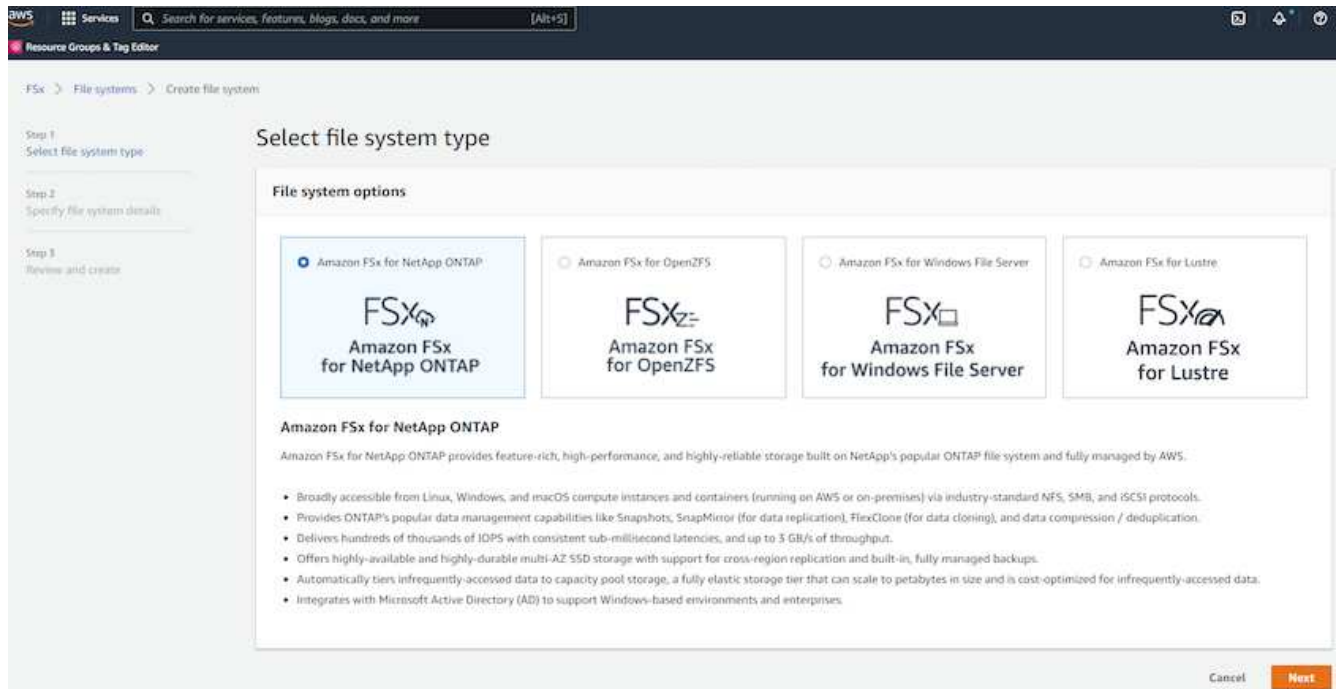
Management DNS name	svm-005c6edf027866ca4.fs-0a51a3f08922224d5.fsx.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Management IP address	198.19.255.68
NFS DNS name	svm-005c6edf027866ca4.fs-0a51a3f08922224d5.fsx.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	NFS IP address	198.19.255.68
iSCSI DNS name	iscsi.svm-005c6edf027866ca4.fs-0a51a3f08922224d5.fsx.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	iSCSI IP addresses	10.0.1.200, 10.0.0.86

See the following step-by-step procedures for setting up either a primary or standby HA FSx cluster.

1. From the FSx console, click Create File System to start the FSx provision workflow.



2. Select Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP. Then click Next.



3. Select Standard Create and, in File System Details, name your file system, Multi-AZ HA. Based on your database workload, choose either Automatic or User-Provisioned IOPS up to 80,000 SSD IOPS. FSx storage comes with up to 2TiB NVMe caching at the backend that can deliver even higher measured IOPS.

## File system details

File system name - optional [Info](#)

Maximum of 256 Unicode letters, whitespace, and numbers, plus + - = . \_ : /

Deployment type [Info](#)

Multi-AZ

Single-AZ

SSD storage capacity [Info](#)

Minimum 1024 GiB; Maximum 192 TiB.

Provisioned SSD IOPS

Amazon FSx provides 3 IOPS per GiB of storage capacity. You can also provision additional SSD IOPS as needed.

Automatic (3 IOPS per GiB of SSD storage)

User-provisioned

Maximum 80,000 IOPS

Throughput capacity [Info](#)

The sustained speed at which the file server hosting your file system can serve data. The file server can also burst to higher speeds for periods of time.

Recommended throughput capacity

128 MB/s

Specify throughput capacity

Throughput capacity

4. In the Network & Security section, select the VPC, security group, and subnets. These should be created before FSx deployment. Based on the role of the FSx cluster (primary or standby), place the FSx storage nodes in the appropriate zones.

## Network & security

### Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) [Info](#)

Specify the VPC from which your file system is accessible.

vpc-0474064fc537e5182

### VPC Security Groups [Info](#)

Specify VPC Security Groups to associate with your file system's network interfaces.

Choose VPC security group(s)

sg-08148ca915189ac87 (default) X

### Preferred subnet [Info](#)

Specify the preferred subnet for your file system.

subnet-08c952541f4ab282d (us-east-1a)

### Standby subnet

subnet-0a84d6eeeb0f4e5c0 (us-east-1b)

### VPC route tables

Specify the VPC route tables associated with your file system.

- VPC's default route table
- Select one or more VPC route tables

### Endpoint IP address range

Specify the IP address range in which the endpoints to access your file system will be created

- No preference
- Select an IP address range

5. In the Security & Encryption section, accept the default, and enter the fsxadmin password.

## Security & encryption

### Encryption key [Info](#)

AWS Key Management Service (KMS) encryption key that protects your file system data at rest.

aws/fsx (default)

Description	Account	KMS key ID
Default master key that protects my FSx resources when no other key is defined	759995470648	5b31feff-6759-4306-a852-9c99a743982a

### File system administrative password

Password for this file system's "fsxadmin" user, which you can use to access the ONTAP CLI or REST API.

- Don't specify a password
- Specify a password

Password

Confirm password

6. Enter the SVM name and the vsadmin password.

### Default storage virtual machine configuration

Storage virtual machine name

SVM administrative password  
Password for this SVM's "vsadmin" user, which you can use to access the ONTAP CLI or REST API.

Don't specify a password

Specify a password

Password

Confirm password

Active Directory  
Joining an Active Directory enables access from Windows and MacOS clients over the SMB protocol.

Do not join an Active Directory

Join an Active Directory

7. Leave the volume configuration blank; you do not need to create a volume at this point.

**Default volume configuration**

Volume name  
  
Maximum of 203 alphanumeric characters, plus \_.

Junction path  
  
The location within your file system where your volume will be mounted.

Volume size  
  
Minimum 20 MiB; Maximum 104857600 MiB

Storage efficiency  
Select whether you would like to enable ONTAP storage efficiencies on your volume: deduplication, compression, and compaction.

Enabled (recommended)  
 Disabled

Capacity pool tiering policy  
You can optionally enable automatic tiering of your data to lower-cost capacity pool storage.

► Backup and maintenance - optional

► Tags - optional

Cancel

8. Review the Summary page, and click Create File System to complete FSx file system provision.

aws Services Search for services, features, blogs, docs, and more [Alt+S]

Resource Groups & Tag Editor

Step 1 Select file system type

Step 2 Specify file system details

Step 3 Review and create

## Create file system

**Summary**  
Verify the following attributes before proceeding

Attribute	Value	Editable after creation
File system type	Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP	
File system name	aws_ora_prod	✓
Deployment type	Multi-AZ	
Storage type	SSD	
SSD storage capacity	1,024 GiB	✓
Minimum SSD IOPS	40000 IOPS	✓
Throughput capacity	512 MB/s	✓
Virtual Private Cloud (VPC)	vpc-0474064fc537e5182	
VPC Security Groups	sg-08148ca915189ac87	✓
Preferred subnet	subnet-08c952541f4ab282d	
Standby subnet	subnet-0a84d6eeeb0f4e5c0	
VPC route tables	VPC's default route table	
Endpoint IP address range	No preference	
KMS key ID	arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:759995470648:key/5b31feff-6759-4306-a852-9c99a743982a	
Daily automatic backup window	No preference	✓
Automatic backup	7 day(s)	✓

### Provisioning of database volumes for Oracle database

See [Managing FSx for ONTAP volumes - creating a volume](#) for details.

Key considerations:

- Sizing the database volumes appropriately.
- Disabling capacity pool tiering policy for performance configuration.
- Enabling Oracle dNFS for NFS storage volumes.
- Setting up multipath for iSCSI storage volumes.

### Create database volume from FSx console

From the AWS FSx console, you can create three volumes for Oracle database file storage: one for the Oracle binary, one for the Oracle data, and one for the Oracle log. Make sure that volume naming matches the Oracle host name (defined in the hosts file in the automation toolkit) for proper identification. In this example, we use db1 as the EC2 Oracle host name instead of a typical IP-address-based host name for an EC2 instance.

## Create volume



### File system

ONTAP | fs-0a51a3f08922224d5 | rdscustomfs007



### Storage virtual machine

svm-005c6edf027866ca4 | fsx



### Volume name

db1\_bin

Maximum of 203 alphanumeric characters, plus \_.

### Junction path

/db1\_bin

The location within your file system where your volume will be mounted.

### Volume size

51200

Minimum 20 MiB; Maximum 104857600 MiB

### Storage efficiency

Select whether you would like to enable ONTAP storage efficiencies on your volume: deduplication, compression, and compaction.

- Enabled (recommended)
- Disabled

### Capacity pool tiering policy

You can optionally enable automatic tiering of your data to lower-cost capacity pool storage.

None



Cancel

Confirm



## Create volume



### File system

ONTAP | fs-0a51a3f08922224d5 | rdscustomfs007



### Storage virtual machine

svm-005c6edf027866ca4 | fsx



### Volume name

db1\_data

Maximum of 203 alphanumeric characters, plus \_ .

### Junction path

/db1\_data

The location within your file system where your volume will be mounted.

### Volume size

512000

Minimum 20 MiB; Maximum 104857600 MiB

### Storage efficiency

Select whether you would like to enable ONTAP storage efficiencies on your volume: deduplication, compression, and compaction.

- Enabled (recommended)
- Disabled

### Capacity pool tiering policy

You can optionally enable automatic tiering of your data to lower-cost capacity pool storage.

None



Cancel

Confirm

**Create volume**
✕

---

**File system**

ONTAP | fs-0a51a3f08922224d5 | rdscustomfs007 ▼

**Storage virtual machine**

svm-005c6edf027866ca4 | fsx ▼

**Volume name**

db1\_log

Maximum of 203 alphanumeric characters, plus \_.

**Junction path**

/db1\_log

The location within your file system where your volume will be mounted.

**Volume size**

256000

Minimum 20 MiB; Maximum 104857600 MiB

**Storage efficiency**

Select whether you would like to enable ONTAP storage efficiencies on your volume: deduplication, compression, and compaction.

Enabled (recommended)
   
 Disabled

**Capacity pool tiering policy**

You can optionally enable automatic tiering of your data to lower-cost capacity pool storage.

None ▼

Cancel
Confirm



Creating iSCSI LUNs is not currently supported by the FSx console. For iSCSI LUNs deployment for Oracle, the volumes and LUNs can be created by using automation for ONTAP with the NetApp Automation Toolkit.

### Install and configure Oracle on an EC2 instance with FSx database volumes

The NetApp automation team provide an automation kit to run Oracle installation and configuration on EC2 instances according to best practices. The current version of the automation kit supports Oracle 19c on NFS with the default RU patch 19.8. The automation kit can be easily adapted for other RU patches if needed.

## Prepare a Ansible controller to run automation

Follow the instruction in the section "[Creating and connecting to an EC2 instance for hosting Oracle database](#)" to provision a small EC2 Linux instance to run the Ansible controller. Rather than using RedHat, Amazon Linux t2.large with 2vCPU and 8G RAM should be sufficient.

## Retrieve NetApp Oracle deployment automation toolkit

Log into the EC2 Ansible controller instance provisioned from step 1 as ec2-user and from the ec2-user home directory, execute the `git clone` command to clone a copy of the automation code.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-Automation/na_oracle19c_deploy.git
```

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-Automation/na_rds_fsx_oranfs_config.git
```

## Execute automated Oracle 19c deployment using automation toolkit

See these detailed instruction [CLI deployment Oracle 19c Database](#) to deploy Oracle 19c with CLI automation. There is a small change in command syntax for playbook execution because you are using an SSH key pair instead of a password for host access authentication. The following list is a high level summary:

1. By default, an EC2 instance uses an SSH key pair for access authentication. From Ansible controller automation root directories `/home/ec2-user/na_oracle19c_deploy`, and `/home/ec2-user/na_rds_fsx_oranfs_config`, make a copy of the SSH key `accesststkey.pem` for the Oracle host deployed in the step "[Creating and connecting to an EC2 instance for hosting Oracle database](#)."
2. Log into the EC2 instance DB host as ec2-user, and install the python3 library.

```
sudo yum install python3
```

3. Create a 16G swap space from the root disk drive. By default, an EC2 instance creates zero swap space. Follow this AWS documentation: [How do I allocate memory to work as swap space in an Amazon EC2 instance by using a swap file?](#).
4. Return to the Ansible controller (`cd /home/ec2-user/na_rds_fsx_oranfs_config`), and execute the `preclone` playbook with the appropriate requirements and `linux_config` tags.

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts rds_preclone_config.yml -u ec2-user --private-key accesststkey.pem -e @vars/fsx_vars.yml -t requirements_config
```

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts rds_preclone_config.yml -u ec2-user --private-key accesststkey.pem -e @vars/fsx_vars.yml -t linux_config
```

5. Switch to the `/home/ec2-user/na_oracle19c_deploy-master` directory, read the README file, and populate the global `vars.yml` file with the relevant global parameters.

6. Populate the `host_name.yml` file with the relevant parameters in the `host_vars` directory.
7. Execute the playbook for Linux, and press Enter when prompted for the `vsadmin` password.

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts all_playbook.yml -u ec2-user --private-key
accesststkey.pem -t linux_config -e @vars/vars.yml
```

8. Execute the playbook for Oracle, and press enter when prompted for the `vsadmin` password.

```
ansible-playbook -i hosts all_playbook.yml -u ec2-user --private-key
accesststkey.pem -t oracle_config -e @vars/vars.yml
```

Change the permission bit on the SSH key file to 400 if needed. Change the Oracle host (`ansible_host` in the `host_vars` file) IP address to your EC2 instance public address.

### Setting up SnapMirror between primary and standby FSx HA cluster

For high availability and disaster recovery, you can set up SnapMirror replication between the primary and standby FSx storage cluster. Unlike other cloud storage services, FSx enables a user to control and manage storage replication at a desired frequency and replication throughput. It also enables users to test HA/DR without any effect on availability.

The following steps show how to set up replication between a primary and standby FSx storage cluster.

1. Setup primary and standby cluster peering. Log into the primary cluster as the `fsxadmin` user and execute the following command. This reciprocal create process executes the create command on both the primary cluster and the standby cluster. Replace `standby_cluster_name` with the appropriate name for your environment.

```
cluster peer create -peer-addr
standby_cluster_name,inter_cluster_ip_address -username fsxadmin
-initial-allowed-vserver-peers *
```

2. Set up vServer peering between the primary and standby cluster. Log into the primary cluster as the `vsadmin` user and execute the following command. Replace `primary_vserver_name`, `standby_vserver_name`, `standby_cluster_name` with the appropriate names for your environment.

```
vserver peer create -vserver primary_vserver_name -peer-vserver
standby_vserver_name -peer-cluster standby_cluster_name -applications
snapmirror
```

3. Verify that the cluster and vserver peerings are set up correctly.

```

FsxId00164454fac5591e6::> cluster peer show
Peer Cluster Name          Cluster Serial Number Availability Authentication
-----
FsxId0b6a95149d07aa82e    1-80-000011             Available         ok

FsxId00164454fac5591e6::> vserver peer show
Vserver      Peer      Peer      Peering      Remote
Vserver      Vserver  State     Peer Cluster Applications Vserver
-----
svm_FSxOraSource
svm_FSxOraTarget
peered       FsxId0b6a95149d07aa82e
snapmirror   svm_FSxOraTarget

FsxId00164454fac5591e6::>

```

4. Create target NFS volumes at the standby FSx cluster for each source volume at the primary FSx cluster. Replace the volume name as appropriate for your environment.

```

vol create -volume dr_db1_bin -aggregate aggr1 -size 50G -state online
-policy default -type DP

```

```

vol create -volume dr_db1_data -aggregate aggr1 -size 500G -state online
-policy default -type DP

```

```

vol create -volume dr_db1_log -aggregate aggr1 -size 250G -state online
-policy default -type DP

```

5. You can also create iSCSI volumes and LUNs for the Oracle binary, Oracle data, and the Oracle log if the iSCSI protocol is employed for data access. Leave approximately 10% free space in the volumes for snapshots.

```

vol create -volume dr_db1_bin -aggregate aggr1 -size 50G -state online
-policy default -unix-permissions ---rwxr-xr-x -type RW

```

```

lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_bin/dr_db1_bin_01 -size 45G -ostype linux

```

```

vol create -volume dr_db1_data -aggregate aggr1 -size 500G -state online
-policy default -unix-permissions ---rwxr-xr-x -type RW

```

```

lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_data/dr_db1_data_01 -size 100G -ostype
linux

```

```
lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_data/dr_db1_data_02 -size 100G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_data/dr_db1_data_03 -size 100G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_data/dr_db1_data_04 -size 100G -ostype linux
```

```
vol create -volume dr_db1_log -aggregate aggr1 -size 250G -state online -policy default -unix-permissions ---rwxr-xr-x -type RW
```

```
lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_log/dr_db1_log_01 -size 45G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_log/dr_db1_log_02 -size 45G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_log/dr_db1_log_03 -size 45G -ostype linux
```

```
lun create -path /vol/dr_db1_log/dr_db1_log_04 -size 45G -ostype linux
```

6. For iSCSI LUNs, create mapping for the Oracle host initiator for each LUN, using the binary LUN as an example. Replace the igroup with an appropriate name for your environment, and increment the lun-id for each additional LUN.

```
lun mapping create -path /vol/dr_db1_bin/dr_db1_bin_01 -igroup ip-10-0-1-136 -lun-id 0
```

```
lun mapping create -path /vol/dr_db1_data/dr_db1_data_01 -igroup ip-10-0-1-136 -lun-id 1
```

7. Create a SnapMirror relationship between the primary and standby database volumes. Replace the appropriate SVM name for your environment.s

```
snapmirror create -source-path svm_FSxOraSource:db1_bin -destination
-path svm_FSxOraTarget:dr_db1_bin -vserver svm_FSxOraTarget -throttle
unlimited -identity-preserve false -policy MirrorAllSnapshots -type DP
```

```
snapmirror create -source-path svm_FSxOraSource:db1_data -destination
-path svm_FSxOraTarget:dr_db1_data -vserver svm_FSxOraTarget -throttle
unlimited -identity-preserve false -policy MirrorAllSnapshots -type DP
```

```
snapmirror create -source-path svm_FSxOraSource:db1_log -destination
-path svm_FSxOraTarget:dr_db1_log -vserver svm_FSxOraTarget -throttle
unlimited -identity-preserve false -policy MirrorAllSnapshots -type DP
```

This SnapMirror setup can be automated with a NetApp Automation Toolkit for NFS database volumes. The toolkit is available for download from the NetApp public GitHub site.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-
Automation/na_ora_hadr_failover_resync.git
```

Read the README instructions carefully before attempting setup and failover testing.



Replicating the Oracle binary from the primary to a standby cluster might have Oracle license implications. Contact your Oracle license representative for clarification. The alternative is to have Oracle installed and configured at the time of recovery and failover.

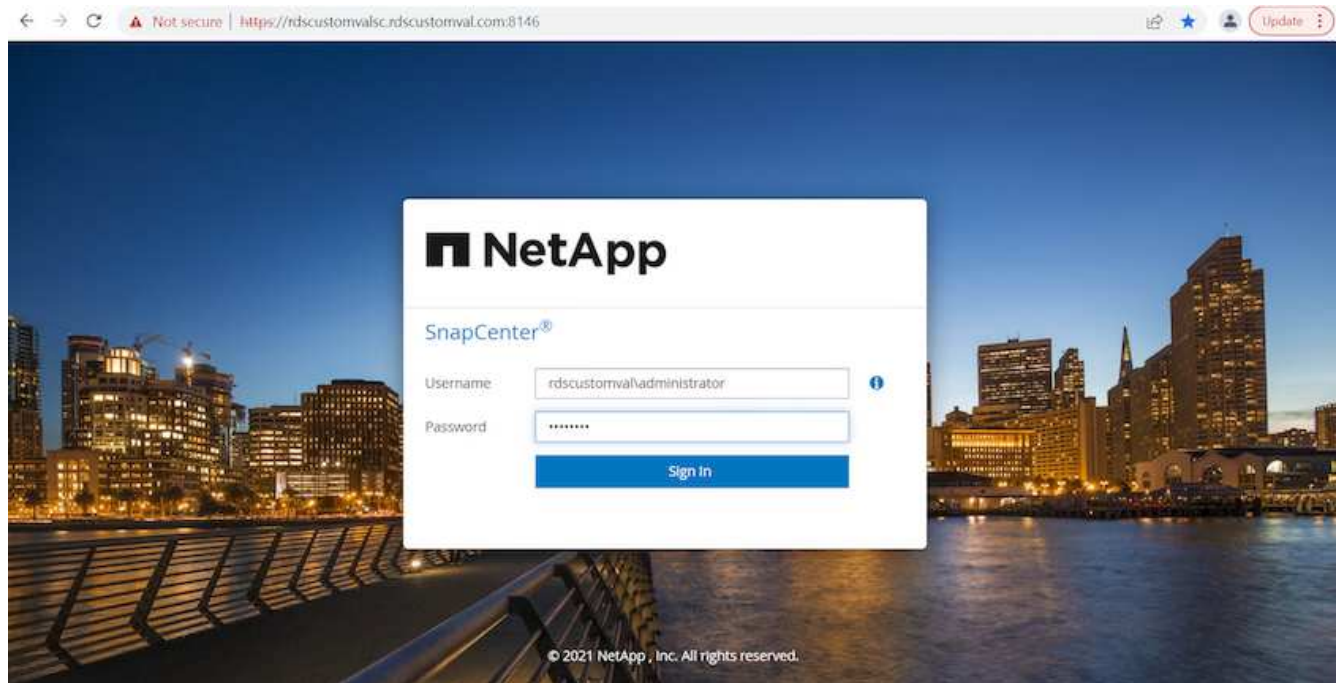
## SnapCenter Deployment

### SnapCenter installation

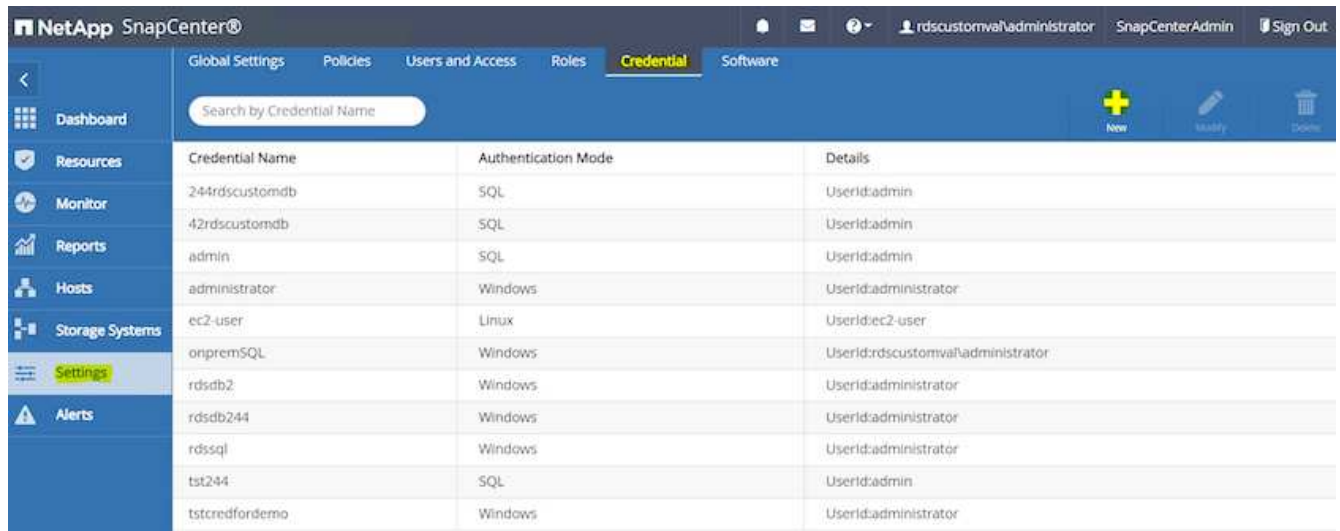
Follow [Installing the SnapCenter Server](#) to install SnapCenter server. This documentation covers how to install a standalone SnapCenter server. A SaaS version of SnapCenter is in beta review and could be available shortly. Check with your NetApp representative for availability if needed.

### Configure SnapCenter plugin for EC2 Oracle host

1. After automated SnapCenter installation, log into SnapCenter as an administrative user for the Window host on which the SnapCenter server is installed.



- From the left-side menu, click Settings, and then Credential and New to add ec2-user credentials for SnapCenter plugin installation.



- Reset the ec2-user password and enable password SSH authentication by editing the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file on the EC2 instance host.
- Verify that the "Use sudo privileges" checkbox is selected. You just reset the ec2-user password in the previous step.



Credential
✕

Credential Name

Authentication Mode

Linux ▼

Username

i

Password

Use sudo privileges i

Cancel

OK

- Add the SnapCenter server name and the IP address to the EC2 instance host file for name resolution.

```

[ec2-user@ip-10-0-0-151 ~]$ sudo vi /etc/hosts
[ec2-user@ip-10-0-0-151 ~]$ cat /etc/hosts
127.0.0.1    localhost localhost.localdomain localhost4
localhost4.localhostdomain4
::1        localhost localhost.localdomain localhost6
localhost6.localhostdomain6
10.0.1.233  rdscustomvalsc.rdscustomval.com rdscustomvalsc
```

- On the SnapCenter server Windows host, add the EC2 instance host IP address to the Windows host file C:\Windows\System32\drivers\etc\hosts.

```

10.0.0.151    ip-10-0-0-151.ec2.internal
```

- In the left-side menu, select Hosts > Managed Hosts, and then click Add to add the EC2 instance host to SnapCenter.

NetApp SnapCenter®

Managed Hosts | Disks | Shares | Initiator Groups | iSCSI Session

Search by Name

Name	Type	System	Plug-in	Version	Overall Status
RDSAMAZ-VJ0DQK0	Windows	Stand-alone	Microsoft Windows Server, Microsoft SQL Server	4.5	Host down
rdscustommssql1.rdscustomval.com	Windows	Stand-alone	Microsoft Windows Server, Microsoft SQL Server	4.5	Running

Check Oracle Database, and, before you submit, click More Options.

Add Host

Host Type: Linux

Host Name: 10.0.0.151

Credentials: ec2-user

Select Plug-ins to Install SnapCenter Plug-ins Package 4.5 P2 for Linux

- Oracle Database
- SAP HANA

[More Options](#): Port, Install Path, Custom Plug-Ins...

Submit Cancel

Check Skip Preinstall Checks. Confirm Skipping Preinstall Checks, and then click Submit After Save.

### More Options ✕

Port  i

Installation Path  i

Skip preinstall checks

Custom Plug-ins \_\_\_\_\_

Choose a File

No plug-ins found.

You are prompted with Confirm Fingerprint, and then click Confirm and Submit.

### Confirm Fingerprint ✕

Authenticity of the host cannot be determined i

Host name	Fingerprint	Valid
ip-10-0-0-151.ec2.internal	ssh-rsa 2048 97:6F:3C:7D:38:42:F6:54:B7:AF:E3:61:61:BA:2E:6F	

After successful plugin configuration, the managed host's overall status show as Running.

Managed Hosts							
Disks		Shares		Initiator Groups		iSCSI Session	
Search by Name <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>							
		+	-	↔		⋮	
		Add	Remove	Refresh		More	
☐	Name	⌵	Type	System	Plug-in	Version	Overall Status
☐	<a href="#">ip-10-0-0-151.ec2.internal</a>		Linux	Stand-alone	UNIX, Oracle Database	4.5	● Running

### Configure backup policy for Oracle database

Refer to this section [Setup database backup policy in SnapCenter](#) for details on configuring the Oracle database backup policy.

Generally you need create a policy for the full snapshot Oracle database backup and a policy for the Oracle archive-log-only snapshot backup.



You can enable Oracle archive log pruning in the backup policy to control log-archive space. Check "Update SnapMirror after creating a local Snapshot copy" in "Select secondary replication option" as you need to replicate to a standby location for HA or DR.

### Configure Oracle database backup and scheduling

Database backup in SnapCenter is user configurable and can be set up either individually or as a group in a resource group. The backup interval depends on the RTO and RPO objectives. NetApp recommends that you run a full database backup every few hours and archive the log backup at a higher frequency such as 10-15 mins for quick recovery.

Refer to the Oracle section of [Implement backup policy to protect database](#) for a detailed step-by-step processes for implementing the backup policy created in the section [Configure backup policy for Oracle database](#) and for backup job scheduling.

The following image provides an example of the resources groups that are set up to back up an Oracle database.



### EC2 and FSx Oracle database management

In addition to the AWS EC2 and FSx management console, the Ansible control node and the SnapCenter UI tool are deployed for database management in this Oracle environment.

An Ansible control node can be used to manage Oracle environment configuration, with parallel updates that keep primary and standby instances in sync for kernel or patch updates. Failover, resync, and failback can be automated with the NetApp Automation Toolkit to archive fast application recovery and availability with Ansible. Some repeatable database management tasks can be executed using a playbook to reduce human errors.

The SnapCenter UI tool can perform database snapshot backup, point-in-time recovery, database cloning, and so on with the SnapCenter plugin for Oracle databases. For more information about Oracle plugin features, see the [SnapCenter Plug-in for Oracle Database overview](#).

The following sections provide details on how key functions of Oracle database management are fulfilled with the SnapCenter UI:

- Database snapshot backups
- Database point-in-time restore
- Database clone creation

Database cloning creates a replica of a primary database on a separate EC2 host for data recovery in the event of logical data error or corruption, and clones can also be used for application testing, debugging, patch

validation, and so on.

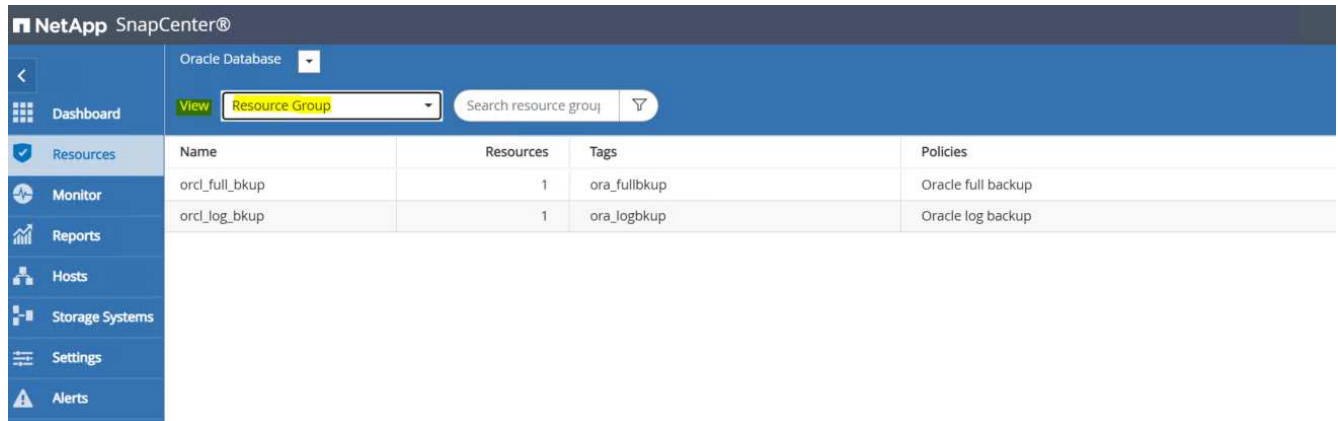
## Taking a snapshot

An EC2/FSx Oracle database is regularly backed up at intervals configured by the user. A user can also take a one-off snapshot backup at any time. This applies to both full-database snapshot backups as well as archive-log-only snapshot backups.

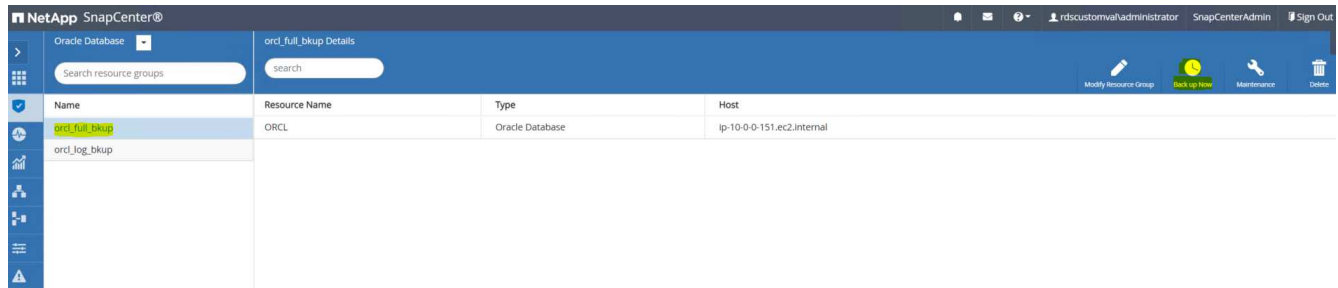
### Taking a full database snapshot

A full database snapshot includes all Oracle files, including data files, control files, and archive log files.

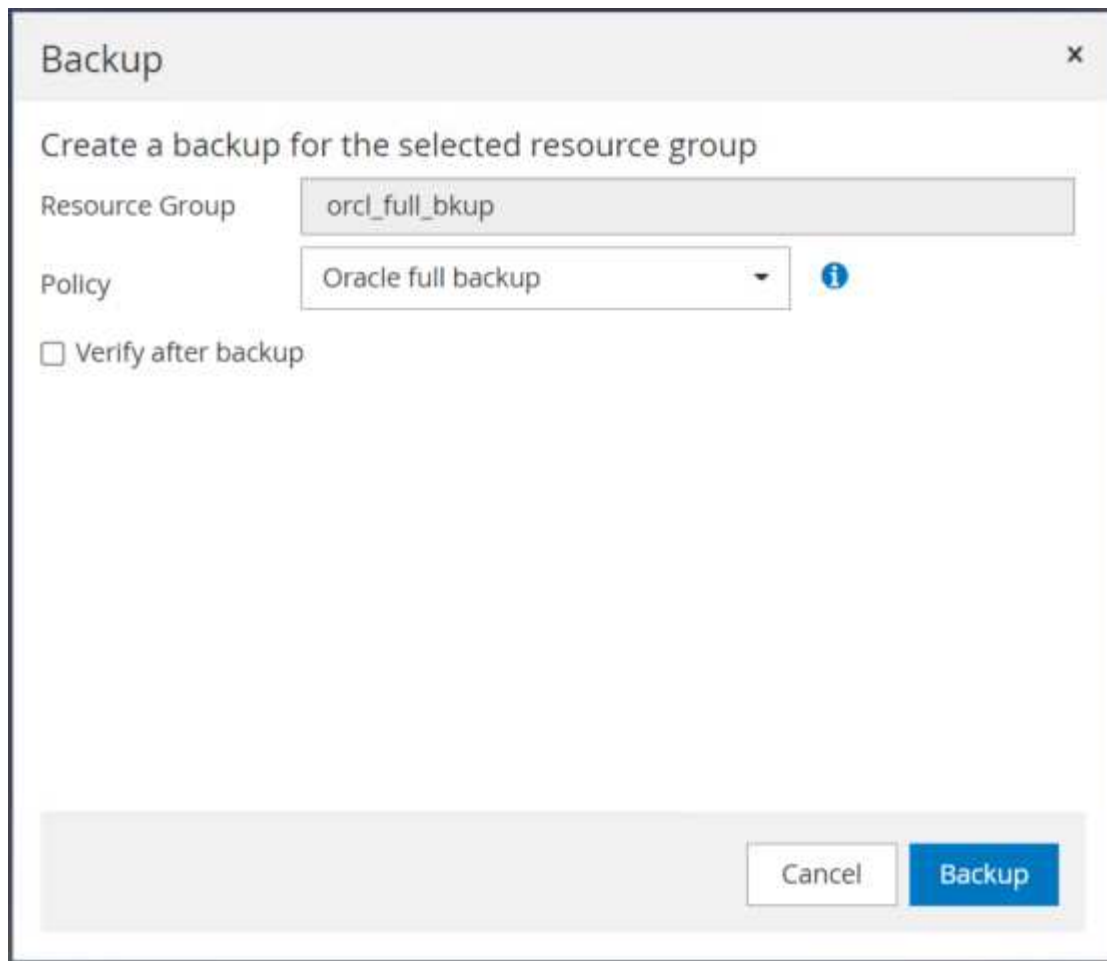
1. Log into the SnapCenter UI and click Resources in the left-side menu. From the View dropdown, change to the Resource Group view.



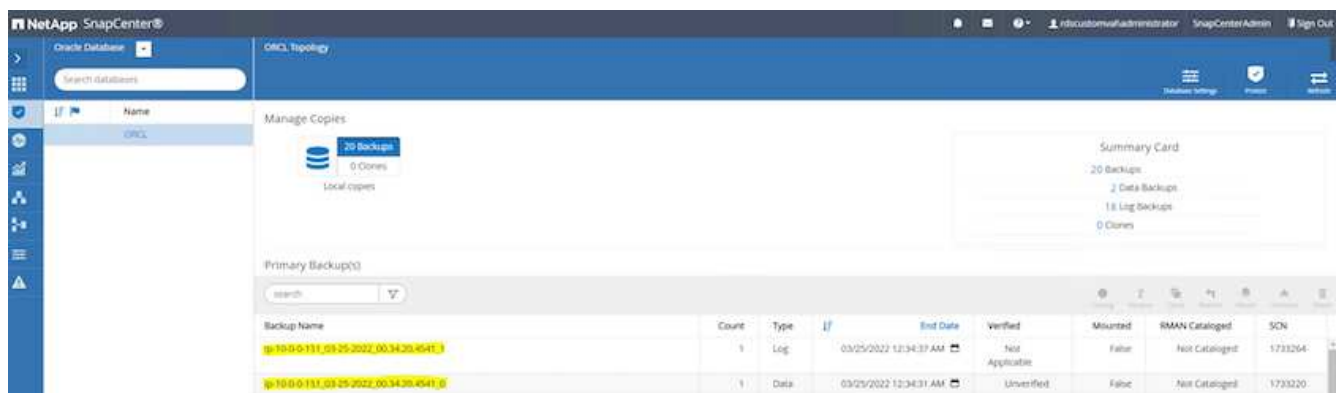
2. Click the full backup resource name, and then click the Backup Now icon to initiate an add-hoc backup.



3. Click Backup and then confirm the backup to start a full database backup.



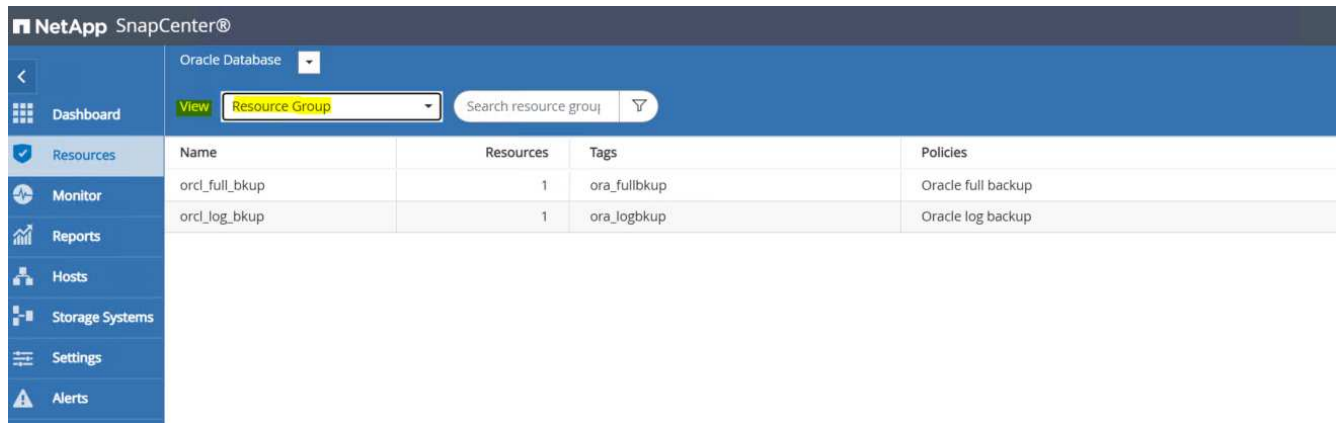
From the Resource view for the database, open the database Managed Backup Copies page to verify that the one-off backup completed successfully. A full database backup creates two snapshots: one for the data volume and one for the log volume.



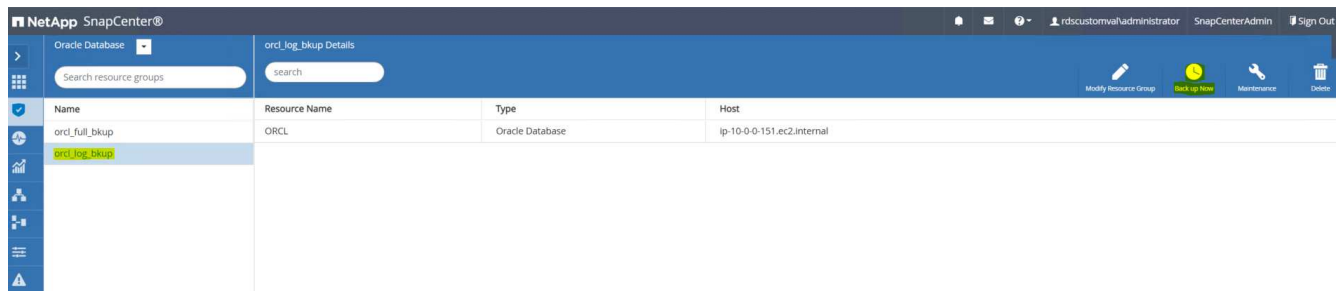
### Taking an archive log snapshot

An archive log snapshot is only taken for the Oracle archive log volume.

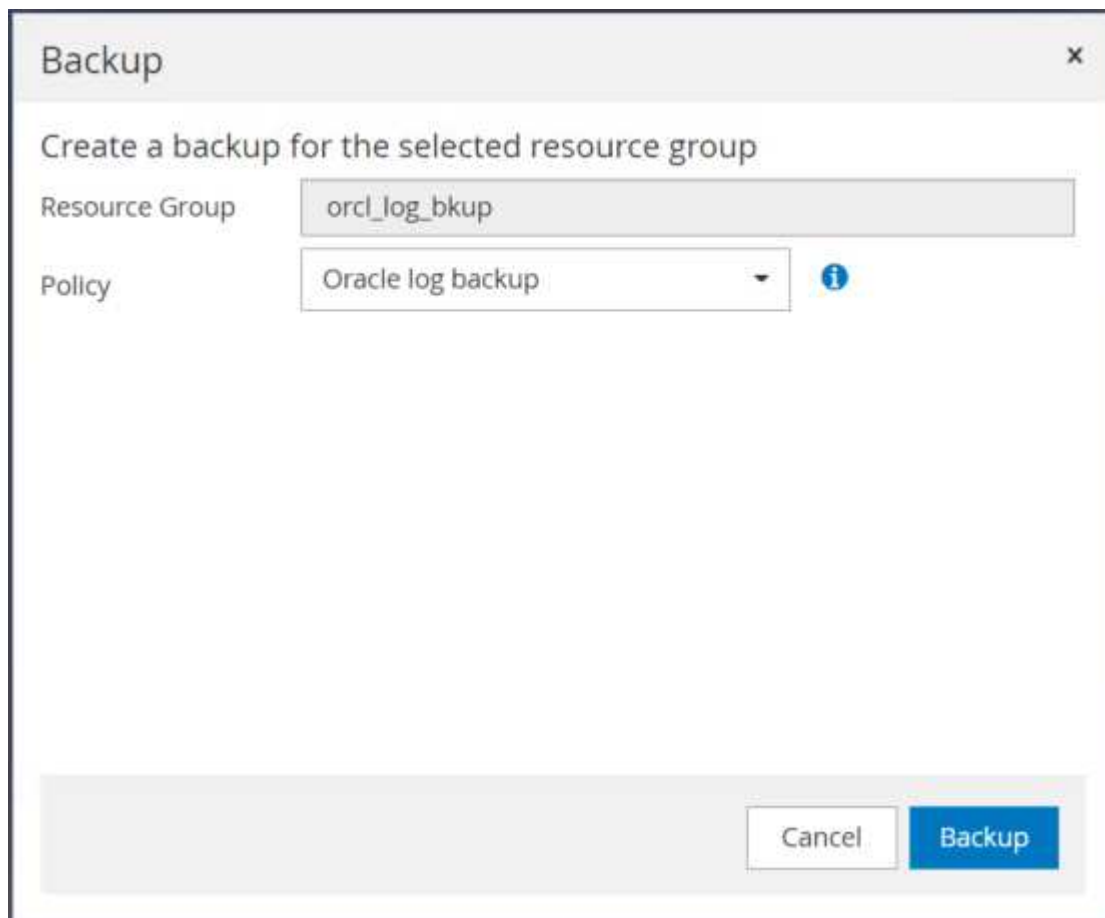
1. Log into the SnapCenter UI and click the Resources tab in the left-side menu bar. From the View dropdown, change to the Resource Group view.



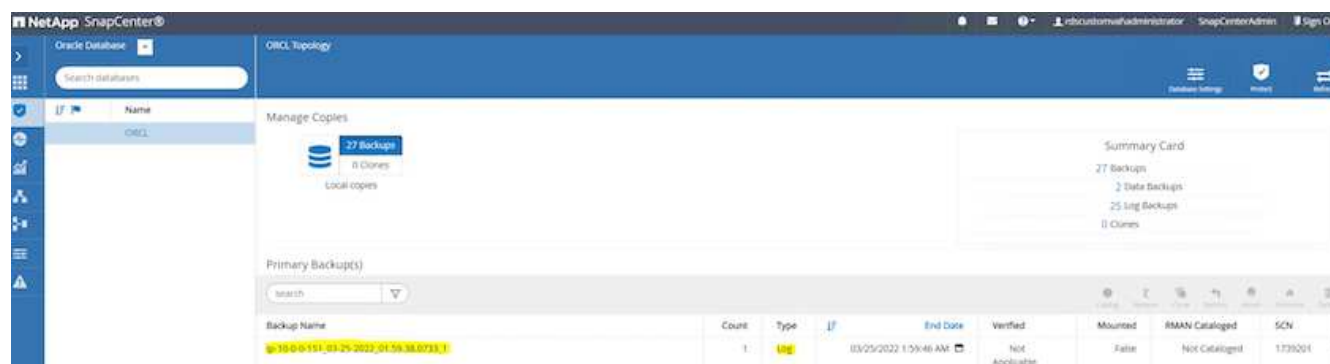
- Click the log backup resource name, and then click the Backup Now icon to initiate an add-hoc backup for archive logs.



- Click Backup and then confirm the backup to start an archive log backup.



From the Resource view for the database, open the database Managed Backup Copies page to verify that the one-off archive log backup completed successfully. An archive log backup creates one snapshot for the log volume.



## Restoring to a point in time

SnapCenter-based restore to a point in time is executed on the same EC2 instance host. Complete the following steps to perform the restore:

1. From the SnapCenter Resources tab > Database view, click the database name to open the database backup.



2. Select the database backup copy and the desired point in time to be restored. Also mark down the corresponding SCN number for the point in time. The point-in-time restore can be performed using either the time or the SCN.



NetApp SnapCenter®

Oracle Database | ORCL Topology

Search databases

Manage Copies

78 Backups  
0 Clones  
Local copies

Summary Card

78 Backups  
5 Data Backups  
73 Log Backups  
0 Clones

Primary Backup(s)

Backup Name	Count	Type	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_12-40-01.1098_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 12:40:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1784293
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_12-25-01.0080_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 12:25:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1783383
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_12-10-01.1097_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 12:10:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1782417
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-55-01.0500_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:55:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1781160
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-40-01.0323_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:40:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1780268
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-25-01.0430_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:25:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1779368
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-15-01.1503_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:15:17 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1778546
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-15-01.1503_0	1	Data	03/25/2022 11:15:11 AM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	1778504
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-10-01.1834_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:10:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1778184

3. Highlight the log volume snapshot and click the Mount button to mount the volume.

Manage Copies

78 Backups  
0 Clones  
Local copies

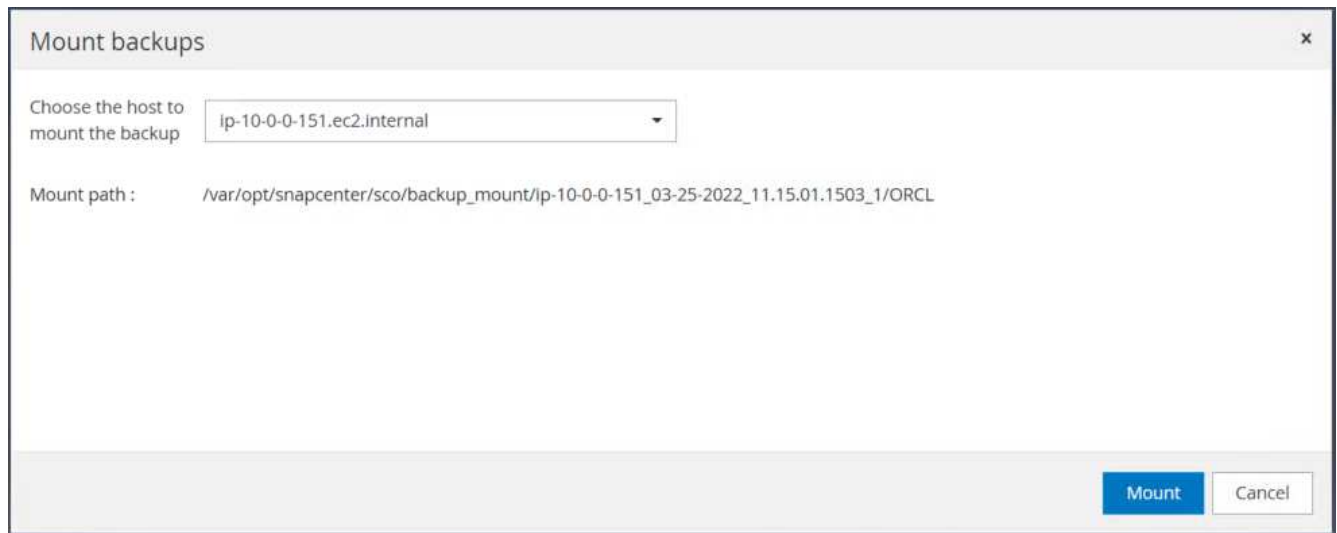
Summary Card

78 Backups  
5 Data Backups  
73 Log Backups  
0 Clones

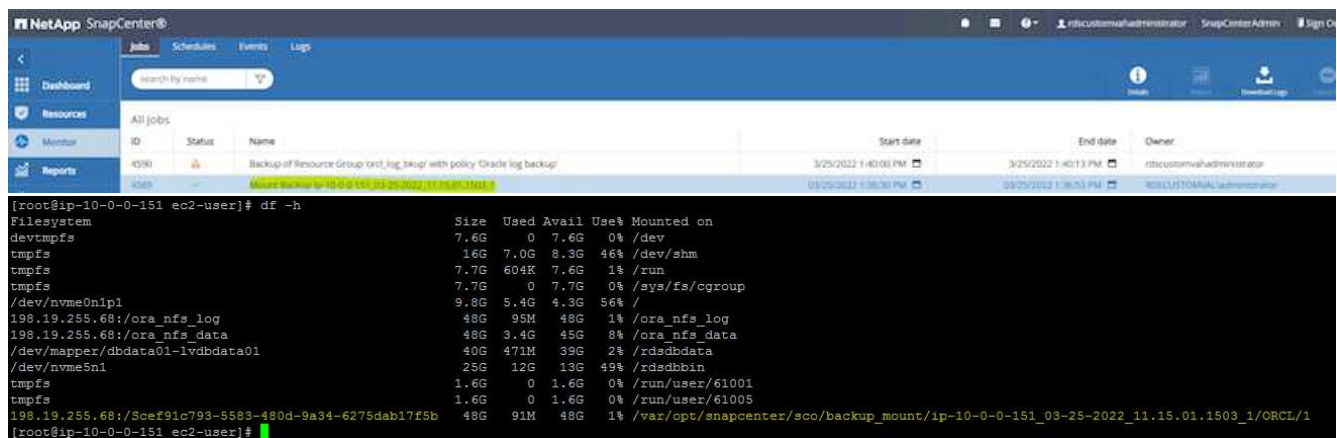
Primary Backup(s)

Backup Name	Count	Type	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_12-40-01.1098_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 12:40:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1784293	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_12-25-01.0080_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 12:25:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1783383	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_12-10-01.1097_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 12:10:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1782417	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-55-01.0500_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:55:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1781160	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-40-01.0323_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:40:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1780268	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-25-01.0430_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:25:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1779368	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-15-01.1503_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:15:17 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1778546	Mount
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-15-01.1503_0	1	Data	03/25/2022 11:15:11 AM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	1778504	
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11-10-01.1834_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:10:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1778184	

4. Choose the primary EC2 instance to mount the volume.



- Verify that the mount job completes successfully. Also check on the EC2 instance host to see that log volume mounted and also the mount point path.



- Copy the archive logs from the mounted log volume to the current archive log directory.

```
[ec2-user@ip-10-0-0-151 ~]$ cp /var/opt/snapcenter/sco/backup_mount/ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.15.01.1503_1/ORCL/1/db/ORCL_A/arch/*.arc /ora_nfs_log/db/ORCL_A/arch/
```

- Return to the SnapCenter Resource tab > database backup page, highlight the data snapshot copy, and click the Restore button to start the database restore workflow.

Manage Copies

**80 Backups**

0 Clones

Local copies

**Summary Card**

80 Backups

5 Data Backups

75 Log Backups

0 Clones

Primary Backup(s)

Backup Name	Count	Type	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_12.10.01.1097_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 12:10:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1782417
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.55.01.0500_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:55:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1781160
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.40.01.0323_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:40:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1780268
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.25.01.0430_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:25:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1779368
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.15.01.1503_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:15:17 AM	Not Applicable	True	Not Cataloged	1778546
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.15.01.1503_0	1	Data	03/25/2022 11:15:11 AM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	1778504
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.10.01.1834_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 11:10:09 AM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1778184

8. Check "All Datafiles" and "Change database state if needed for restore and recovery", and click Next.

### Restore ORCL

**1 Restore Scope**

2 Recovery Scope

3 PreOps

4 PostOps

5 Notification

6 Summary

**Restore Scope**

All Datafiles

Tablespaces

Control files

**Database State**

Change database state if needed for restore and recovery

**Restore Mode**

Force in place restore

If this check box is not selected and if any of the in place restore criteria is not met, restore will be performed using the connect and copy method. The connect and copy restore method might take time based on the files being restored.

Previous **Next**

9. Choose a desired recovery scope using either SCN or time. Rather than copying the mounted archive logs

to the current log directory as demonstrated in step 6, the mounted archive log path can be listed in "Specify external archive log files locations" for recovery.

Restore ORCL

1 Restore Scope

2 Recovery Scope

3 PreOps

4 PostOps

5 Notification

6 Summary

Choose Recovery Scope

All Logs

Until SCN (System Change Number)

SCN

Date and Time

No recovery

Specify external archive log files locations

Previous Next

10. Specify an optional prescript to run if necessary.

Restore ORCL x

**1** Restore Scope  
**2** Recovery Scope  
**3** PreOps  
4 PostOps  
5 Notification  
6 Summary

**Specify optional scripts to run before performing a restore job** ⓘ

Prescript full path

Arguments

Script timeout

11. Specify an optional afterscript to run if necessary. Check the open database after recovery.

Restore ORCL x

**1** Restore Scope

**2** Recovery Scope

**3** PreOps

**4** PostOps

5 Notification

6 Summary

**Specify optional scripts to run after performing a restore job** ⓘ

Postscript full path

Arguments

Open the database or container database in READ-WRITE mode after recovery

12. Provide an SMTP server and email address if a job notification is needed.

Restore ORCL x

- 1 Restore Scope
- 2 Recovery Scope
- 3 PreOps
- 4 PostOps
- 5 Notification**
- 6 Summary

**Provide email settings** ⓘ

Email preference:

From:

To:

Subject:

Attach job report

13. Restore the job summary. Click finish to launch the restore job.

Restore ORCL x

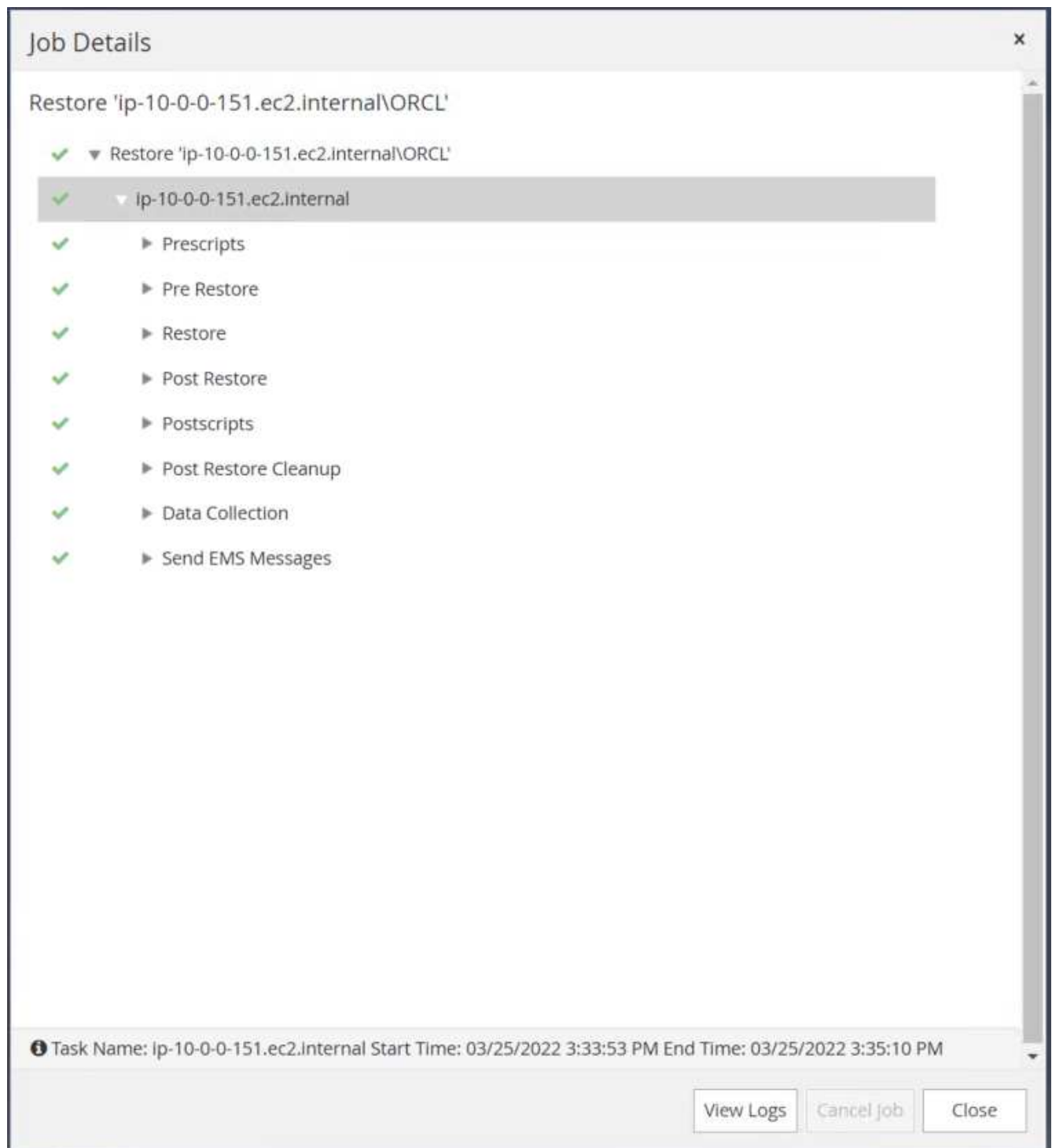
- 1 Restore Scope
- 2 Recovery Scope
- 3 PreOps
- 4 PostOps
- 5 Notification
- 6 Summary**

### Summary

Backup name	lp-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_11.15.01.1503_0
Backup date	03/25/2022 11:15:11 AM
Restore scope	All DataFiles
Recovery scope	Until SCN 1778546
Auxiliary destination	
Options	Change database state if necessary , Open the database or container database in READ-WRITE mode after recovery
Prescript full path	None
Prescript arguments	
Postscript full path	None
Postscript arguments	
Send email	No

14. Validate the restore from SnapCenter.





15. Validate the restore from the EC2 instance host.

```

-bash-4.2$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production on Fri Mar 25 15:44:08 2022
Version 19.8.0.0.0

Copyright (c) 1982, 2020, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 19c Enterprise Edition Release 19.0.0.0.0 - Production
Version 19.8.0.0.0

SQL> select name, RESETLOGS_CHANGE#, RESETLOGS_TIME, open_mode from v$database;

NAME          RESETLOGS_CHANGE# RESETLOGS_TIME OPEN_MODE
-----
ORCL          1778547 25-MAR-22 READ WRITE

SQL>

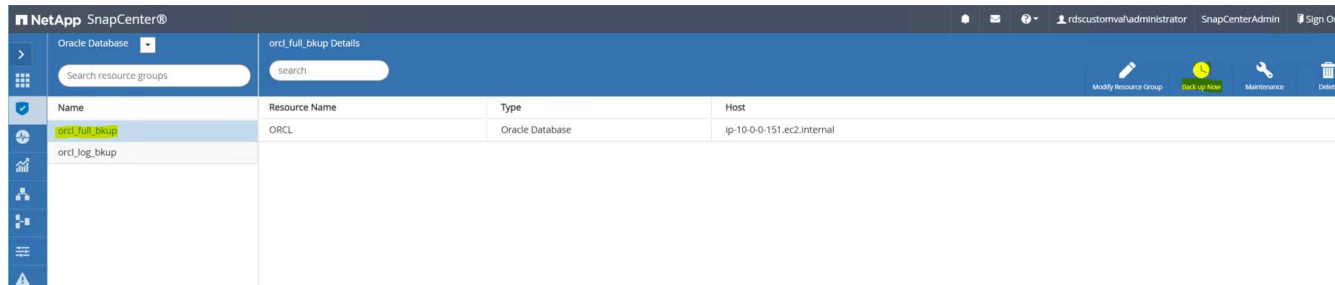
```

16. To unmount the restore log volume, reverse the steps in step 4.

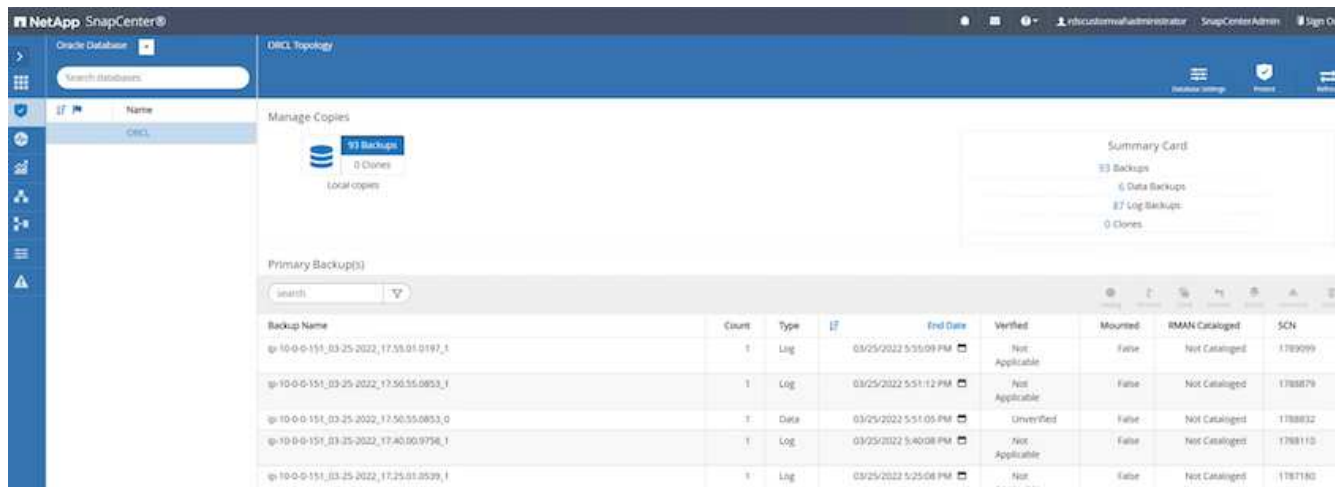
### Creating a database clone

The following section demonstrates how to use the SnapCenter clone workflow to create a database clone from a primary database to a standby EC2 instance.

1. Take a full snapshot backup of the primary database from SnapCenter using the full backup resource group.



2. From the SnapCenter Resource tab > Database view, open the Database Backup Management page for the primary database that the replica is to be created from.



3. Mount the log volume snapshot taken in step 4 to the standby EC2 instance host.

ORCL Topology

Database Settings Protect Refresh

Manage Copies

95 Backups  
0 Clones  
Local copies

Summary Card

95 Backups  
6 Data Backups  
89 Log Backups  
0 Clones

Primary Backup(s)

search

Backup Name	Count	Type	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_18:55:01.0309_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 6:55:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1892563
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_18:40:00.9602_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 6:40:23 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1891375
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:55:01.0197_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 5:55:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1789099
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:50:55.0853_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 5:51:12 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1788879
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:50:55.0853_0	1	Data	03/25/2022 5:51:05 PM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	1788832
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:40:00.9758_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 5:40:08 PM	Not	False	Not Cataloged	1788110

Mount backups

Choose the host to mount the backup: ip-10-0-0-47.ec2.internal

Mount path: /var/opt/snapcenter/sco/backup\_mount/ip-10-0-0-151\_03-25-2022\_17:50:55.0853\_1/ORCL

Mount Cancel

4. Highlight the snapshot copy to be cloned for the replica, and click the Clone button to start the clone procedure.

ORCL Topology

Database Settings Protect Refresh

Manage Copies

93 Backups  
0 Clones  
Local copies

Summary Card

93 Backups  
6 Data Backups  
87 Log Backups  
0 Clones

Primary Backup(s)

search

Backup Name	Count	Type	End Date	Verified	Mounted	RMAN Cataloged	SCN
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:55:01.0197_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 5:55:09 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1789099
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:50:55.0853_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 5:51:12 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1788879
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:50:55.0853_0	1	Data	03/25/2022 5:51:05 PM	Unverified	False	Not Cataloged	1788832
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:40:00.9758_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 5:40:08 PM	Not Applicable	False	Not Cataloged	1788110
ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17:25:01.0539_1	1	Log	03/25/2022 5:25:08 PM	Not	False	Not Cataloged	1787180

5. Change the replica copy name so that it is different from the primary database name. Click Next.

The screenshot shows a wizard window titled "Clone from ORCL" with a close button (x) in the top right corner. On the left, there is a vertical navigation pane with seven steps: 1 Name (highlighted in blue), 2 Locations, 3 Credentials, 4 PreOps, 5 PostOps, 6 Notification, and 7 Summary. The main area of the wizard is titled "Provide clone database SID" and contains a "Clone SID" label followed by a text input field containing the value "ORCLREAD". At the bottom right of the wizard, there are two buttons: "Previous" (disabled) and "Next" (active/highlighted in blue).

6. Change the clone host to the standby EC2 host, accept the default naming, and click Next.

Clone from ORCL
✕

- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Select the host to create a clone

Clone host

Datafile locations ⓘ

Reset

Control files ⓘ

+  
Reset

Redo logs ⓘ

Group	Size	Unit	Number of files
RedoGroup 1	<input type="text" value="128"/>	MB	1
<input type="text" value="/ora_nfs_data_ORCLREAD/ORCLREAD/redolog/redo04.log"/>			
RedoGroup 2	<input type="text" value="128"/>	MB	1

+  
Reset

Previous Next

7. Change your Oracle home settings to match those configured for the target Oracle server host, and click Next.

Clone from ORCL

1 Name

2 Locations

3 Credentials

4 PreOps

5 PostOps

6 Notification

7 Summary

### Database Credentials for the clone

Credential name for sys user: None + i

Database port: 1521

### Oracle Home Settings i

Oracle Home: /rdsdbbin/oracle

Oracle OS User: rdsdb

Oracle OS Group: database

Previous Next

8. Specify a recovery point using either time or the SCN and mounted archive log path.

Clone from ORCL

1 Name  
2 Locations  
3 Credentials  
4 PreOps  
5 PostOps  
6 Notification  
7 Summary

Recover Database

Until Cancel **i**

Date and Time  **i**  
Date-time format: MM/DD/YYYY hh:mm:ss

Until SCN (System Change Number)  **i**

Specify external archive log locations **i**

Create new DBID **i**

Create tempfile for temporary tablespace **i**

Enter SQL queries to apply when clone is created

Enter scripts to run after clone operation **i**

Previous Next

9. Send the SMTP email settings if needed.

Clone from ORCL x

- 1 Name
- 2 Locations
- 3 Credentials
- 4 PreOps
- 5 PostOps
- 6 Notification
- 7 Summary

### Provide email settings i

Email preference Never

From From email

To Email to

Subject Notification

Attach job report

Previous Next

10. Clone the job summary, and click Finish to launch the clone job.



Clone from ORCL

1 Name

2 Locations

3 Credentials

4 PreOps

5 PostOps

6 Notification

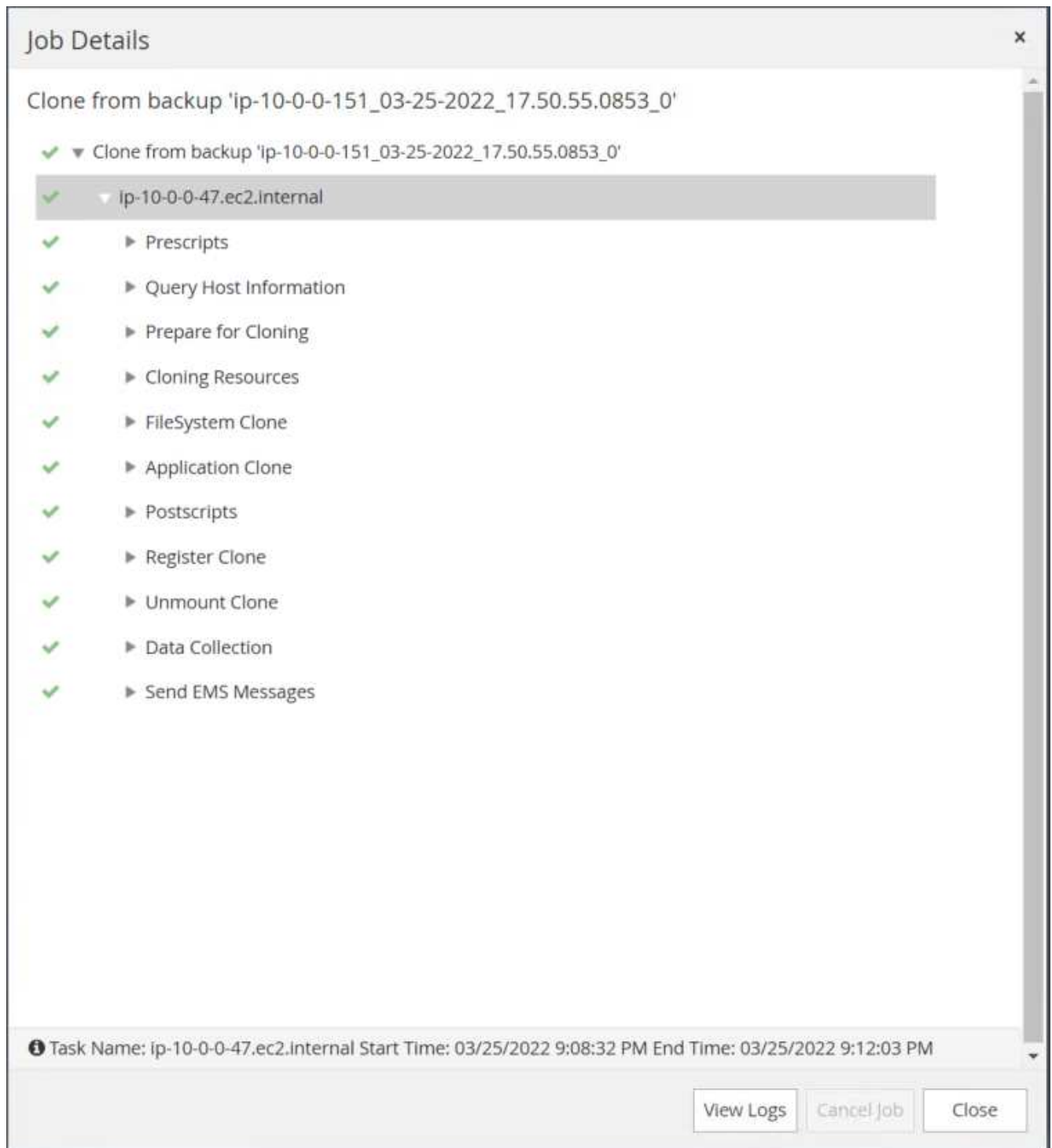
7 Summary

**Summary**

Clone from backup	ip-10-0-0-151_03-25-2022_17.50.55.0853_0
Clone SID	ORCLREAD
Clone server	ip-10-0-0-47.ec2.internal
Oracle home	/rdsdbbin/oracle
Oracle OS user	rdsdb
Oracle OS group	database
Datafile mountpaths	/ora_nfs_data_ORCLREAD
Control files	/ora_nfs_data_ORCLREAD/ORCLREAD/control/control01.ctl
Redo groups	RedoGroup =1 TotalSize =128 Path =/ora_nfs_data_ORCLREAD/ORCLREAD/redolog/redo04.log RedoGroup =2 TotalSize =128 Path =/ora_nfs_data_ORCLREAD/ORCLREAD/redolog/redo03.log RedoGroup =3 TotalSize =128 Path =/ora_nfs_data_ORCLREAD/ORCLREAD/redolog/redo02.log RedoGroup =4 TotalSize =128 Path =/ora_nfs_data_ORCLREAD/ORCLREAD/redolog/redo01.log
Recovery scope	Until SCN 1788879
Prescript full path	none
Prescript arguments	
Postscript full path	none
Postscript arguments	
Send email	No

Previous Finish

11. Validate the replica clone by reviewing the clone job log.



The cloned database is registered in SnapCenter immediately.



12. Turn off Oracle archive log mode. Log into the EC2 instance as oracle user and execute following command:

```
sqlplus / as sysdba
```

```
shutdown immediate;
```

```
startup mount;
```

```
alter database noarchivelog;
```

```
alter database open;
```



Instead primary Oracle backup copies, a clone can also be created from replicated secondary backup copies on target FSx cluster with same procedures.

### HA failover to standby and resync

The standby Oracle HA cluster provides high availability in the event of failure in the primary site, either in the compute layer or in the storage layer. One significant benefit of the solution is that a user can test and validate the infrastructure at any time or with any frequency. Failover can be user simulated or triggered by real failure. The failover processes are identical and can be automated for fast application recovery.

See the following list of failover procedures:

1. For a simulated failover, run a log snapshot backup to flush the latest transactions to the standby site, as demonstrated in the section [Taking an archive log snapshot](#). For a failover triggered by an actual failure, the last recoverable data is replicated to the standby site with the last successful scheduled log volume backup.
2. Break the SnapMirror between primary and standby FSx cluster.
3. Mount the replicated standby database volumes at the standby EC2 instance host.
4. Relink the Oracle binary if the replicated Oracle binary is used for Oracle recovery.
5. Recover the standby Oracle database to the last available archive log.
6. Open the standby Oracle database for application and user access.
7. For an actual primary site failure, the standby Oracle database now takes the role of the new primary site and database volumes can be used to rebuild the failed primary site as a new standby site with the reverse SnapMirror method.
8. For a simulated primary site failure for testing or validation, shut down the standby Oracle database after the completion of testing exercises. Then unmount the standby database volumes from the standby EC2 instance host and resync replication from the primary site to the standby site.

These procedures can be performed with the NetApp Automation Toolkit available for download at the public NetApp GitHub site.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-
Automation/na_ora_hadr_failover_resync.git
```

Read the README instruction carefully before attempting setup and failover testing.

## Database migration from on-prem to public cloud

Database migration is a challenging endeavor by any means. Migrating an Oracle database from on-premises to the cloud is no exception.

The following sections provide key factors to consider when migrating Oracle databases to the AWS public cloud with the AWS EC2 compute and FSx storage platform.

### ONTAP storage is available on-premises

If the on-premises Oracle database is sitting on an ONTAP storage array, then it is easier to set up replication for database migration using the NetApp SnapMirror technology that is built into AWS FSx ONTAP storage. The migration process can be orchestrated using NetApp BlueXP console.

1. Build a target compute EC2 instance that matches the on-premises instance.
2. Provision matching, equally sized database volumes from FSx console.
3. Mount the FSx database volumes to the EC2 instance.
4. Set up SnapMirror replication between the on-premises database volumes to the target FSx database volumes. The initial sync might take some time to move the primary source data, but any following incremental updates are much quicker.
5. At the time of switchover, shut down the primary application to stop all transactions. From the Oracle sqlplus CLI interface, execute an Oracle online log switch and allow SnapMirror sync to push the last archived log to the target volume.
6. Break up the mirrored volumes, run Oracle recovery at the target, and bring up the database for service.
7. Point applications to the Oracle database in the cloud.

The following video demonstrates how to migrate an Oracle database from on-premises to AWS FSx/EC2 using the NetApp BlueXP console and SnapMirror replication.

### [Migrate on-prem Oracle DB to AWS](#)

### ONTAP storage is not available on premises

If the on-premises Oracle database is hosted on third-party storage other than ONTAP, database migration is based on the restore of a Oracle database backup copy. You must play the archive log to make it current before switching over.

AWS S3 can be used as a staging storage area for database move and migration. See the following high level steps for this method:

1. Provision a new, matching EC2 instance that is comparable with the on-premises instance.

2. Provision equal database volumes from FSx storage and mount the volumes to the EC2 instance.
3. Create a disk-level Oracle backup copy.
4. Move the backup copy to AWS S3 storage.
5. Recreate the Oracle control file and restore and recover the database by pulling data and the archive log from S3 storage.
6. Sync the target Oracle database with the on-premises source database.
7. At switchover, shut down the application and source Oracle database. Copy the last few archive logs and apply them to the target Oracle database to bring it up to date.
8. Start up the target database for user access.
9. Redirect application to the target database to complete the switchover.

### **Migrate on-premises Oracle databases to AWS FSx/EC2 using PDB relocation with maximum availability**

This migration approach is best suited to Oracle databases that are already deployed in PDB/CDB multitenant model, and ONTAP storage is not available on-premises. The PDB relocation method utilizes Oracle PDB hot clone technology to move PDBs between a source CDB and a target CDB while minimizing service interruption.

First, create CDB in the AWS FSx/EC2 with sufficient storage to host PDBs to be migrated from on-premises. Multiple on-premises PDBs can be relocated one at a time.

1. If the on-premises database is deployed in a single instance rather than in the multitenant PDB/CDB model, follow the instructions in [Converting a single instance non-CDB to a PDB in a multitenant CDB](#) to convert the single instance to multitenant PDB/CDB. Then follow the next step to migrate the converted PDB to CDB in AWS FSx/EC2.
2. If the on-premises database is already deployed in the multitenant PDB/CDB model, follow the instructions in [Migrate on-premises Oracle databases to cloud with PDB relocation](#) to perform the migration.

The following video demonstrates how an Oracle database (PDB) can be migrated to FSx/EC2 using PDB relocation with maximum availability.

#### [Migrate on-prem Oracle PDB to AWS CDB with max availability](#)



Although the instructions in step 1 and 2 are illustrated in the context of Azure public cloud, the procedures are applicable to AWS cloud without any changes.

The NetApp Solutions Automation team provides a migration toolkit that can facilitate Oracle database migration from on-premises to the AWS cloud. Use following command to download the Oracle database migration toolkit for PDB relocation.

```
git clone https://github.com/NetApp-Automation/na_ora_aws_migration.git
```

## Copyright information

Copyright © 2024 NetApp, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Printed in the U.S. No part of this document covered by copyright may be reproduced in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or storage in an electronic retrieval system—without prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Software derived from copyrighted NetApp material is subject to the following license and disclaimer:

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NETAPP "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WHICH ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NETAPP BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

NetApp reserves the right to change any products described herein at any time, and without notice. NetApp assumes no responsibility or liability arising from the use of products described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by NetApp. The use or purchase of this product does not convey a license under any patent rights, trademark rights, or any other intellectual property rights of NetApp.

The product described in this manual may be protected by one or more U.S. patents, foreign patents, or pending applications.

LIMITED RIGHTS LEGEND: Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (b)(3) of the Rights in Technical Data -Noncommercial Items at DFARS 252.227-7013 (FEB 2014) and FAR 52.227-19 (DEC 2007).

Data contained herein pertains to a commercial product and/or commercial service (as defined in FAR 2.101) and is proprietary to NetApp, Inc. All NetApp technical data and computer software provided under this Agreement is commercial in nature and developed solely at private expense. The U.S. Government has a non-exclusive, non-transferrable, nonsublicensable, worldwide, limited irrevocable license to use the Data only in connection with and in support of the U.S. Government contract under which the Data was delivered. Except as provided herein, the Data may not be used, disclosed, reproduced, modified, performed, or displayed without the prior written approval of NetApp, Inc. United States Government license rights for the Department of Defense are limited to those rights identified in DFARS clause 252.227-7015(b) (FEB 2014).

## Trademark information

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed at <http://www.netapp.com/TM> are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.